

THE  
Gentlemans Jockey,  
AND  
APPROVED FARRIER.  
INSTRUCTING  
In the Natures, Causes, and Cures  
of all DISEASES incident to  
HORSES.

WITH  
An Exact and Easie Method of Breeding.  
Buying, Dieting, and otherwise ordering  
all sorts of Horses, as well for common and  
ordinary Use, as the Heats and Course.

With divers other Curiosities, collected by the  
long Practice, Experience and pains of J. H. Esq;  
*Matthew Hodson, Mr. Holled, Mr. Willis, Mr.  
Robinson, Mr. Holden, Thomas Empson,  
Mr. Roper, Mr. Medcalf, and Nath. Shaw.*

---

**The Seventh Edition with Additions.**

---

Virg. Georg. l. 3.

*Tantus amor Laudum, tantæ est Victoria curæ,  
Æquum est noscere Equos, atque Johannem Obolum.*

LONDON: Printed for H. Twyford, and O. Blagrove,  
and are to be sold by William Rogers at the Sun in  
Fleetstreet, over against St. Dunstons-Church. 1683.

# THE Gentlemans IOCKY

Kidney 282  
 Leprosy 79  
 Lice how to kill 109.  
 Mange 78. 86. 161  
 Niles 82. 111  
 Murren 129. 180. 261  
 Mallender 135. 180. 265  
 Moulten grease 141  
 Night mare 273  
 Ever gorged 130  
 Purgation 68  
 Needing for a Horse 286  
 Pestilence 123. 124. 129  
 To make a Horse pisse 126. 149. 199  
 Horse or Cow Poisoned 130  
 Plannet struck 273  
 Palfrey 273  
 Ratitails 82  
 Rowell french 104  
 Stone 69  
 Strain or Swelling 72. 73. 85. 117  
 Splene 86. 280  
 Sleeping Evil 110. 273  
 Swelling under Jawes 125  
 Strangling 148  
 Strain in y<sup>e</sup> Back Pasterne or Sinew } 166. 254  
 Swelling in generall 167 } 257  
 Surfeit 192. 245. 203. 256. 277  
 Stumbling 222  
 Start how to make ill. 220  
 Stargullion 220  
 Spur galling 272  
 Sinews being cut 273  
 Loose Teeth 251  
 Ulcers how to cure 200. 257  
 Vomits 245  
 Venome drunken 223  
 Venomous wounds 275  
 Wind Collick 86. 87. 184  
 Ointment to heale any wound } 105  
 Water Farcey 157. 217 }  
 Wind broken 154  
 Wormes 220. 200. 222  
 Yellowes 111. 209. 275

Anker 103  
 Appoplexy or Palfrey 135  
 Anticow 267  
 Bore 64. 63. 84. 230. 282  
 Button Farcey 218  
 Colt Evil 285  
 Feavers 252  
 Hurtlebone 175  
 B. St. Mandel 159. 256  
 Noose 113. 140. 163  
 Strain in y<sup>e</sup> Neck  
 Pain in y<sup>e</sup> Neck  
 Titch in the Tail 257  
 Laxatives or Loole 68. 180  
 Lax or Blood 281  
 Lax 262. 263. 264. 285  
 Lax 167  
 Purgs or 255  
 Growing 70. 138. 141. 147



Dispute  
 Scatichew  
 83. 84. 85. 155

Legs swelled 15. 70. 215. 216  
 Grege fallen 81

Cramp





KC17871

~~297.5762~~

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY  
FROM  
THE BEQUEST OF  
EVENT JANSEN WENDELL  
1914

28-27  
40



# TO THE READER.

**A***Fter so many Essays, and some of them not of the meanest, which have been made concerning this point, let it not be thought a presumption to offer known Experiments. For although there have been many great Masters, who have in many points offered their knowledge in publick to the world in this Matter, yet have they not altogether said so much, but that a Well-wisher may have liberty to cast in his Gleanings ; and though it is said Facile est inventis addere, yet such Additions have wrought that high improve-*

## To the Reader.

ment of Arts, whereof in this Age the world boasteth, Æsculapius, who by the Ancients was deified for his first practice in Physick, yet was after outdone by Galen, whose Works are still famous, even beyond Æsculapius's Name; yet hath later Learning queried much in Galen, and Paracelsus not afraid even to Arraign him. If these in that so renowned Art of Pharmaceuty have thus varied and amended by practical Experiments, why may not this little Manual (as it makes a Supplement) be looked upon with an impartial eye? If the Subject of it in practice hath been worth the Experimenting by such able hands, it cannot be less worth thy Reading. And though you expect more than you find, yet I dare say you shall find more than you expect. Whoever is a Gentleman, or a Souldier that loves his Horse, will find the Advantage thereof in any Experiment; and the honest Country-man, whose

## To the Reader.

*whose habitation perhaps may be some miles distant from a Farrier, having this Book, may at an easie charge Cure his own Cattle. Use it with the same Freedom I offer it ; and I dare believe, you will find no less Advantage than many Honourable Persons have done upon occasion, as these Medicines and Experiments have been applyed, and well Approved: and therein your Satisfaction will be an amends for all our past Care and labour.*



EHI



# THE TABLE

## A.

<b>A</b> GE, <i>How to know a Horses Age.</i>	55 ad 59
Anbury, <i>a Remedy for it.</i>	90, 266
Apoplexy, <i>or Palsy.</i>	120
Antocow, <i>a disease in a Horse, and how cured.</i>	247

## B.

<b>B</b> Read <i>for a Running Horse, how and of what to be made; The First.</i>	16, 17
<i>The Second Bread.</i>	25
<i>The Last Bread.</i>	26 ad 30
Botts <i>cured.</i>	54, 55, 115, 140, 211
Back <i>Sinew-strain cured.</i>	62
Bloud, <i>to cure pissing bloud.</i>	73, 99, 104, 151, 253
Back, <i>Swelling there, how cured.</i>	74
Breed <i>of Horses, how to order.</i>	79
Bleeding <i>at Nose, to stop.</i>	97, 209, 212
Burning, <i>to cure a Horse burnt by a Mare.</i>	100
Bruise <i>inward, Remedy for it.</i>	132
A 4	Back-

## The TABLE.

Back-swanked Horse, how to remedy.	141, 165
Blow, or other mischance, causing swelling about the Head.	144
Brisket swelled, how cured.	191
Button-farcy cured.	194
Belly-ach. or Belly-bound.	251
Blood. To stop in any part.	258
Blood-spavin, &c.	212, 265

### C.

<b>C</b> OLD, a Medicine for it.	52, 61, 73, 132, 136, 161, 184, 185
Cut, or hewing on the Leg, cured.	68
Canker in the Horses mouth, how to cure.	72
	187
Colts, when best to wean them.	84
What is the best feeding for them.	85, 87
When they may be handled.	88
Cough, old or new, how to cure.	98, 132, 133, 135, 215
Canker in the tongue, a Remedy.	98
Canker in the head.	142
Cods bruised, or bitten, how to cure.	150
Cords, a Disease, the cure.	195, 266
Cold, either old or new, to cure with safety.	210,
	211, 214, 215, 245
For a Curb, the Remedy.	218, 262
For the Cough, a good Receipt.	230
Cramp or Convulsion of Sinews.	245
Colick, how to cure.	251
Colt-Evil cured.	253
Canker in the Nose.	258
Crick in the Neck.	259
Hurts in the Cornet, Quitter-bone or Matlong.	266

### D. Diet

# The TABLE.

## D.

<b>D</b> iet, <i>how to diet a Horse for a match.</i>	7 ad 14
Dung of a Horse to be observed.	45
Directions to use Medicines.	151
Diapente, <i>how made.</i>	197
Decoction what it is,	237
Drugs, to be put into a Glister.	238
Dropsie, <i>how to cure.</i>	251

## E.

<b>E</b> Ye, a Water for sore Eyes or dim sight.	62
Enterfering, <i>how to help or hide it.</i>	71
Eye, a stroke or bite of the Eye, cured.	73, 129, 130
To take a film from the Eye.	93, 119
Diseases in the Eyes, and their cure.	209

## F.

<b>F</b> eeding of a Horse to be observed.	45
Farcy cured.	68, 72, 94, 100, 120, 121, 188, 190, 192, 193, 194, 270
Founder, Frettize, &c. cured.	68
Flaps in a Horses mouth, <i>how to cure.</i>	90
Fundament, or Mother fain out, <i>the cure of it.</i>	94, 252
Foot, a stub or other hurt in the Foot.	95
Falling-Evil, <i>how to cure.</i>	97
Foundred Horse, <i>how to cure.</i>	104, 163, 261
For the Chest-Founder.	110
Fistula, <i>how to cure.</i>	113, 224
Feeding Cattle, <i>observations concerning the same.</i>	128
Foot-	

## The TABLE.

Foot foundring, <i>the cure.</i>	138
Feaver in a Horse, <i>to cure.</i>	206
Falling-Evil, <i>the Remedy.</i>	244
Foundring in the Body, <i>how to help.</i>	248
Frictions for a Horse.	256
Falling of the Crest, Manginess.	259
Defending of a Horse from Flies.	268

### G.

<b>G</b> Round to run on, <i>how to be chosen.</i>	48
<b>G</b> For the Glanders, a Medicine. 53, 61, 70, 224,	246
Balls for the same.	53
Grease fallen into the Legs, <i>how to be cured.</i> 70,	269
Galls between the Legs, <i>how to prevent.</i>	71
Garget, <i>to cure.</i>	127, 139, 140
Gall, <i>to help the overflowing thereof.</i>	130
Gripping or Fretting in a Horses Belly.	204
Glanders, a preparatory Drink.	221
The black Drink for the Glanders.	223
Gangrene in the Foot, a Remedy for it.	224
A Glyster for a sick or surfeited Horse. 234, 237, <i>ad</i> 243	
Glysters, and their use.	236, 255
How to be made.	136
When to give it.	137
The length of the Glyster-pipe.	238
Gall diseased.	249

### H.

<b>H</b> Heats, <i>What Heats are necessary for a Running</i>	
Horse.	15
Horses Hair to be minded.	49
Hodson's Medicines.	51
	Horses



## The T A B L E.

Horses hoofs to be made tough and strong.	69
Brittle hoofs cured.	71, 123, 125, 169
Horses for Hunting, Pleasure, or Travel.	76
	ad 79
How to breed Horses.	79
How to handle a sturdy Horse.	86
Hurle-bone out of Joynt, helped.	155
Heat sudden and great, that the Grease is melted	161
Horse, to make him thrive.	170, 171, 172, 268
Horse-spice, how made.	198
Head-ach in a Horse, cured.	244
Hide-bound.	246
Hungry-Evil, how cured.	249
Halting by strain or stroke.	261
Hoofs Infirmities of all kinds.	264

### I.

<b>I</b> V E S, A Disease. Remedies for the same.	118
Inflammation, how to cure.	150
Imposthume in the Ear, how to cure.	257
Any other Imposthume.	257
Itch in the Tail, &c.	260
Interfering, or Shackle-galls.	263

### K.

<b>K</b> ernels under a Horses Throat, how to cure.	135, 145, 185
Knobs, old and hard, the Remedy thereof.	146, 267
Knees broken, swelled, and hard.	147
Kidneys, Pains therein remedied.	252
	L. Laxa-

# The TABLE.

## L.

<b>L</b> Axativeness, or extream Loosness, cured.	60
Legs swelled, or Gourded, the Remedy for them.	65,
	66, 191, 192,
Leprosie cured.	68
Lice, how to kill.	95, 123, 131, 267
Lask, or Bloody Flux, to cure.	251

## M.

<b>M</b> uzzle, the use of it for a Horse.	17, 18
Mange cured.	68, 74, 143, 207
Mules, a Disease, cured.	71, 99
Mares not good for the Race.	80
When first to be covered, and how to be order'd then	83
How to make them fruitful.	82
How to be cured when ready to Fole.	83
Murren, how to cure.	114
Mallender, to cure it.	119, 160, 262
Moulten Horse, how to cure.	125
Mourning of the Chine, a Remedy for it.	246
Mares. Particular diseases in them, and their remedies.	254
Mouth-Diseases, Bloody-rifts, Liggs, Lampreys, &c.	259

## N.

<b>N</b> avel-Gall, how to cure.	99, 123, 144
Night-mare, the Remedy for it.	244
Neefing, for a Horse.	256

O. Obser-

# The TABLE.

## O.

<b>O</b> bservations for Sickness and Health in a Horse.	43
Over-reach, or a tread of the Heel, cured.	73, 167, 163
Over-gorged, Horse or Cow, how to cure.	115

## P.

<b>P</b> rivy parts of a Horse to be minded.	47
An excellent Purgation for a Horse.	59
Pearl, Pin, and Web, or any film on a Horses Eye.	69
Prick in the Foot, how to cure.	101, 167, 168
Pestilence in a Horse, how to cure it.	109, 114
Piss, to make a Horse Piss.	111, 132, 176
Poll-Evil, to cure.	112, 158
Poyson, for a Horse or Cow that is poysoned.	115
A Purge, for peccant humours by surfeits.	228
A Purge by Grass in Summer.	233
A general Purge	234, 235, 236
Planet-struck, how to cure.	244
Palsey, the Remedy.	ibid.

## Q.

<b>Q</b> uitter-bone, how to cure.	103, 218
------------------------------------	----------

## R.

<b>R</b> unning Horse, how to order him.	5, 6, 21, 22, 23
How to keep him the second fortnight.	15
How to keep him the third fortnight.	24
The last fortnights keeping.	26
Rules how to buy a Horse.	30 ad 46
Ring-bone, cured.	67, 127, 128, 199, 252
	Rats

# The TABLE.

Rats Tails, <i>cured.</i>	71
Rowel, <i>how to put in a French Rowel.</i>	91

## S.

S Cowering, <i>the first Scowring of a Running Horse.</i>	21
<i>How to Order him after it</i>	21, 22, 23
Sickness of a Horse in general.	40, 41
State of a Horses body, <i>which the best.</i>	46, 47
Sweating of a Horse to be observed.	49
Strain in the Shoulder, <i>a Remedy.</i>	52
For a Sinew-sprung Horse.	<i>ibid</i>
Stone cured.	60
A Scowring for a Horse.	61, 122, 126, 130
Strain or swelling, <i>a Medicine.</i>	62, 63, 64, 74, 103
Splint and Spavin cured.	67
Scratches, <i>a cure for them.</i>	65, 66, 70, 72, 74, 137, 138, 202, 262
Surbate cured.	68, 101
A Salve for a Sore or swelling.	69
For the Spleen, <i>a Remedy.</i>	75, 250
Stallion his Diet.	83
<i>How long he will continue.</i>	84
Sore or swelling, <i>to rot it.</i>	90, 111
Sleeping-Evil, cured.	96, 244
Splent, <i>how to take out.</i>	106, 107, 159, 262
Swelling under the Jaws.	110
Staggers, <i>a Remedy for it.</i>	116, 117, 183
Sinew-strain in the Leg.	124, 145, 146, 157, 271
Strangling, <i>the cure for it.</i>	131, 133
Shaw's Receipts.	142
Strain in the Pastern, Back, or Sinews.	147, 224, 229, 261
Salve of Sope and Brandy, <i>how to be boiled.</i>	147
Swellings	

# The TABLE.

Swellings in general, the cure.	148
Shoulder-strain, a Remedy.	153, 155
Stifle in the stifle-bone.	156
Scrupin, what, and its cure.	159
Stub in the Foot or Heel.	167, 132
Surfeit, the cure.	170, 173, 180, 228, 234, 240, 248
Squinzey, or strangling, the cure.	177
Stumbling, to help it.	197
Spavin, the cure of it.	200, 212
Star, how to make it in the Forehead of a Horse.	201
Strangullion, how to remedy it.	203, 253
Suppository for a Horse.	230, 231, 232, 255
The Strangle cured.	257
Swaying the Back.	260
To draw out Stubs or Thorns.	266
Spur-galling.	267
Sinewes being cut,	ibid.

## T.

<b>T</b> Horn or Nail, to draw out.	89
Tyred Horse, how to help.	247
Teeth, or Loose Teeth.	258

## V.

<b>U</b> Rine of a Horse to be observed.	44, 45
Vein that swells upon blood-letting.	98
Vives, a Disease, how cured.	177, 257
Vomits, to cause a Horse to vomit.	217
Venome drunken, the cure of it.	255
Venomous Wounds, &c.	267

W. Water,



# The TABLE.

## W.

<b>W</b> ater, <i>how and when to be given a Horse.</i>	48
Wind-gall, and strain in the Sholder.	64, 263
Wind, a Glister for it.	75
Wind-colick, a Glister.	75, 118
Wound, a drier for a green wound.	89
How to lay open a Wound.	90
An oymntment to heal any Wound.	92, 109, 102
To clean any Wound.	96
Wound, a water to cure it.	108
Water-Farcion, the cure.	117, 193
New-wound, a Remedy for it.	132, 157
Wind-broken, how to cure.	136
Worms, the cure for them.	205, 233, 252
Pain in the Withers.	260
Wounds in the Feet, &c.	265

## Y.

<b>Y</b> ellows, a Remedy for it.	109, 182, 249
Yard foul and furr'd, to cure the same.	169

## A N

A N  
 DDUCTION  
 READER :

O R,  
 Satisfaction to all Rea-  
 ders, and confuting  
 all Self-conceited.

*about the several Opinions of  
 this Kingdom, touching the  
 the Running Horse, because  
 idle and frivolous, some un-  
 derstand in the right way; only in  
 near one Paradox, which is  
 pursued, and infinitely pursued  
 by Professours; and that is  
 a great length of time, for the  
 being ready of an Horse for a  
 Jockey.*

*s, nay some which I know,  
 that I see on their backs, that  
 affirm an Horse which is exceeding fat, foul,  
 newly taken from Grass or Soil, or lofty, li-  
 beral, and unbounded feeding, cannot be  
 B brought*

## The TABLE.

### W.

**W**ater, *how and when to be giv*  
Wind-gall, *and strain in the*  
Wind, *a Glistre for it.*  
Wind-colick, *a Glistre.*  
Wound, *a drier for a green wound.*  
*How to lay open a Wound.*  
*An oyntment to heal any Wound.*  
*To clean any Wound.*  
Wound, *a water to cure it.*  
Water-Farcion, *the cure.*  
New-wound, *a Remedy for it.*  
Wind-broken, *how to cure.*  
Worms, *the cure for them.*  
*Pain in the Withers.*  
Wounds *in the Feet, &c.*

### Y.

**Y**ellows, *a Remedy for it.*  
Yard foul and furr'd, *to cure*

# AN INTRODUCTION

To the READER :

O R,

A gaining of Satisfaction to all Reasonable Practicers, and confuting the wilful Self-conceited.

**I** Will not dispute the several Opinions of Men in this Kingdom, touching the keeping of the Running Horse, because I know many are idle and frivolous, some uncertain, and a few in the right way; only in this I would clear one Paradox, which is strongly maintained, and infinitely pursued by many of our best Professours; and that is the limitation and length of time, for the preparing or making ready of an Horse for a Match or great Wager.

There be divers, nay some which I know, carry the Goddess Isis on their backs, that affirm an Horse which is exceeding fat, foul, newly taken from Grass or Soil, or lofty, liberal, and unbounded feeding, cannot be

B

brought

brought to performance of his best labour under six Months, five is too little, and four an act of impossibility; by which they rob their noble Masters of half a years pleasure, thrust upon them a tiring charge to make the sport loathsome, and get nothing but a Cloak for ignorance, and a few false got Crowns, which melt as they are possessed.

Yet as Hereticks cite Scriptures, so these find reasons to defend want of knowledge.

*As, the danger of so early exercise.*

*The offence of grease too suddenly broken.*

The moving of evil humours too hastily,  
which leads to mortal sickness.

And the moderation or helping of all these by a slow proceeding, and bringing of the Horse into order by degrees and times, or, as I may say, by an ignorant sufferance.

*These reasons, I know, have the shew of a good ground for; the early exercise is dangerous, but not if free from violence.*

To break grease too suddenly, is an offence unsufferable, for it puts both the Limbs and the life in hazard, but not if purged away by Scowrings.

The hasty stirring up of humours in Body, where they superabound, and are generally dispersed, and not settled, cannot but breed sickness.

But not where discretion and judgment  
evacuath



*evacuateth them in wholsome sweats and moderate stirrings.*

*And for the moderation of all these by the tediousness of time, as two Months for the first, two Months for the second, and as many for the last; It is like the curing of a Gangreen in an old man, better to dye than be dismembred, better lose the prize, than bear the charge: for I dare appeal to any noble judgment (whose Purse hath experience in these actions,) if six Months preparation, and the dependances belonging to it, and his person, do not devour up an hundred pound wager.*

*But, you will demand of me, what limitation of time I will allow for this purpose of preparation? And I answer, that two Months time is sufficient at any time of the year whatsoever; and he that cannot do it in two Months, shall never do it in fifteen.*

*But, reply they, no Scowring is to be allowed; for they are Physical, then unnatural; they force nature, and so hurt nature; they make sickness, and so impair health; because nature worketh every thing her self, and though she be longer, yet she hath less danger.*

*I confess that slobber sause Scowrings, which are stuf up with poysonous Ingredients, cannot chuse but bring forth Infirmary; but wholsome Scowrings that are composed of*

*beneficial and nourishing Simples, neither occasion sickness, nor any manner of Infirmity, but bring away grease and all manner of foulness in that kind, that one Week shall effect and cleanse away more than two Months of delatory and doubtful forbearance.*

*Because no man in this lingering course can certainly tell which way the grease and other foulness will avoid: as, whether into his Ordure, which is the safest; into sweat, which is hazardous; into his Limbs, which is mischievous; or remain and putrifie in his Body, which is mortally dangerous; since the issue of all these falleth out according to the strength and estate of the Horses Body, and the diligence of the Keeper: and if either the one fail in power, or the other in care, farewell Horse for that year. All this Envy cannot chuse but confess; only they have but one broken Crutch to support them, which is, they know no scowring, therefore they will allow of no scowring. Against Barbarism I will not dispute, only I appeal to Art and Discretion, whether Purgation or Sufferance (when Nature is offended) be the better doers.*

*To conclude, Two Months I allow for preparation, and according to that time, I have laid directions. My humble suit is, out of a sincere opinion to truth and justice, so to allow or disallow, to refrain or imitate.*



OF THE  
**Running Horse.**

And divers other

**CHOICE SECRETS**

Not formerly published.

*The first Ordering of the Running Horse, according to the several estates of their Bodies.*

**W**hen a Horse is matched (or to be matched) for a running Course, you are principally to regard the estate of the Body in which the Horse is at the time of his Matching : and this estate of Body I divide into three several kinds.

1. The first is, if he be very fat, foul, and either newly taken from Grass or Soil.
2. The second, if he be extream lean and poor, either through over-riding, disorder, or other infirmity.
3. The third, if he be in a good and well liking estate, having had good usage and moderate exercise.

If your Horse be in the first estate of his body, you shall take longer time for matching, keeping, and bringing into order, as two Months at the least, or more, as you can conclude your wager.

If your Horse be in the second estate of Body, that is, very poor, then you shall also take as long time as you may; yet you need not so much as in the former, both because grease cannot much offend, and exercise may go hand in hand with feeding.

If your Horse be in the third estate of Body, (which is a mean betwixt the other extremes) then a Month or six Weeks may be time sufficient to diet him for his match.

Now as you regard these general estates of Bodies, so you must have an eye to certain particular estates of bodies; as if a Horse be fat and foul, yet of free and spending nature, apt quickly to consume, and lose his Flesh; this Horse must not have so strict an hand, neither can he endure so violent exercise, as he that is of a hard disposition, and will feed and be fat upon all meats and all exercises.

Again, if your Horse be in extream poverty, through disorder or misusage, yet is by nature very hardy, and apt both soon to recover his flesh, and long to hold it: then over this Horse you shall by no means hold so liberal and tender an hand, nor forbear that exercise which otherwise you would do to the Horse which is of a tender nature, a weak stomach, and a free spirit. Provided always, you have regard to his Limbs; the imperfection of his Lameness.

Thus you see how to look into the Estates of Horse Bodies, and what time to take for your Matchings.

I will now descend to their several orderings and dietings

dietings: and because in the fat Horse is contained both the lean Horse, and the Horse in reasonable estate of Body. I will in him shew all the secrets and observations which are to be employed in the dieting and ordering of all three, without any omission or reservation whatsoever. For truth, Sir, I have vowed unto you, and truth I will present you.

*How to diet an Horse for a Match, that is fat, foul, and either newly taken from Grass or Soil, being the first Fortnight.*

**I**F you match an Horse that is fat and foul, either by running at Grass, or standing at Soil, or any other means of rest, or too high keeping, you shall for the first fortnight at least rise early in the Morning before day, or at the spring of day, according to the time of the year, and having put on his Bridle wash'd in Beer, and tyed to the Rack, take away the dung and other foulness of the Stable, then you shall dress the Horse exceeding well; that is to say,

You shall first curry him all over from the head to the tail, from the top of the shoulder to the knee, and from the top of the buttock to the hinder Cambril; then dust him all over, either with a clean Dusting-cloth, or with an Horses tail, or such-like thing, made fast to an handle: then curry or rub him all over with the French Brush, beginning with his forehead, temples and cheeks, so down his neck, shoulders, and forelegs, even to the setting on of his Hoofs, so along his sides, and under his belly; and lastly, all about his buttocks, and hinder legs, even to the ground. Then you shall go over all those parts which the Brush hath touched, with your wet hand, and not leave, as near as you can, one loose

hair about him, nor one wet hair; for what your hands did wet, your hands must rub dry again: you shall also with your wet hands cleanse his Sheath, his Yard, his Stones or Cods, and his Tuel: and indeed, not leave any secret place uncleansed, as ears, nostrils, fore-bowels, and between his hinder thighs. Then you shall take an hair-cloth, and with it rub the Horse all over in every part, but especially his Face, Eyes, Cheeks, between the Chops, on the top of his forehead, in the nape of the neck, and down his legs, fetlocks, and about his pasterns.

Lastly, You shall take a clean woollen cloth, and with it you shall rub the Horse all over, beginning with his head and face, and so passing through every part of the Horses Body or Limbs, which hath been before mentioned; then take a wet main-Comb, and comb down main and tail. When this Work is finished, take a fair large body-cloath, of thick warm Houfwives Kersey, (if it be in the winter Season; or of fine Cotton or other light stuff, if it be in the Summer Season) and fold it round about the Horses Body; then clap on his Saddle, and girt the foremost Girth pretty strait, and the other Girth somewhat slack, and wisp it on each side the Horses heart, that both the Girts may be of equal straitness, then put before his breast a warm breast-cloth, and let it cover both his Shoulders.

When the Horse is thus accoutred, and made ready, you shall take a little beer into your mouth, and spirt it into the Horses mouth, and so draw him out of the Stable, and take his back, leaving some ordinary Groom behind you, to trim up your Stable, to carry forth Dung, and shake and toss up your Litter. For you are to understand, and it is a general principle, that your Horse must stand upon good store



store of fresh dry Litter continually, both night and day; and it must ever be of Wheat-straw, if possible; or Oat-Straw, if forced by necessity. As for Barley-straw, and Rye-straw, they are both unwholsome and dangerous; the one doth heart-burn, the other causeth Scowring.

When you are thus mounted, you shall walk forth your Horse a foot-pace, (which we call racking) for you must neither amble, nor trot, at least a mile or two, or more, upon smooth and sound ground, and as near as you can to the steepest hills you can find; there gallop your Horse very gently up those steep hills, and rack or walk him softly down, that he may cool as much one way, as he warmeth another. And when you have thus exercised him a pretty space, then seeing the Sun beginning to rise, or prettily risen, you shall walk your Horse down either to some fresh River, or some clean Pond that is fed with a sweet Spring, and there let your Horse drink at his pleasure.

After he hath drunk, you shall gallop and exercise him moderately as you did before, then walk him a pretty space, and after offer him more water: If he drink, then gallop him again; if he refuse, then gallop him to occasion thirst; and thus always give him exercise both before and after water.

When he hath drunk (as you think sufficiently) then bring him home gently, without a wet hair about him: when you are come to the Stable-door, (before which your Groom shall throw all his foul Litter continually from time to time) you shall there alight from his hack, and by whistling, stretching the Horse upon the straw, & raising the straw up under the Horse, see if you can make him piss; which if at first he do not, yet with a little custom he will soon be brought unto



unto it: and it is an wholesome action, both for the Horses health, & for the cleanly keeping of the Stable.

When these things are performed, you shall then bring the Horse into his Stall; and first tye his head up to the rack in his bridle, then with hard wisps rub all his four Legs down with as great strength as you can; then unloose his breast-cloth, rub his head, neck, and breast exceeding much with a dry cloth: then take off his Saddle, and hang it by; and after take off his Body-cloth; then rub over all the Horses Body and Limbs, especially his back where the Saddle stood; and then clothe him up first with a linnen sheet, then over it a good strong housing-Cloth, and above it his woollen Body cloth, which in the Winter is not amiss to have lined with some thin Cotton, or other woollen stuff, but in the heat of Summer the Kersey it self is sufficient.

When you have girt these Clothes about him, stop his suringle round with reasonable big, soft, and thick Wisps; for with them he will lye at best ease, because the small hard Wisps are ever hurtful.

After your Horse is thus clothed up, you shall then pick his feet, and stop them up with Cow-dung, and then throw into his Rack a little bundle of Hay, so much as a half-penny Bottle in a dear Inn, well dusted, and hard bound up together; and this he shall tear out as he standeth on his Bridle.

After the Horse hath stood on his Bridle more than an hour, or an hour and half, you shall then come to him, and first rub his head, face, and the nape of his neck with a clean rubber, made of new rough hempen Cloth, for this is excellent for the head, and dissolveth all gross and filthy humours; and then you shall draw his Bridle, and with a very clean Cloth, make the Manger so clean as may be; and if he hath

hath scattered any Hay therein, you shall gather it up and throw it back into his Rack; then you shall take the quantity of a quart or better, of sweet, dry, old, and clean-dressed Oats, of which the heaviest and the whitest are the best, as those which we call the *Polana* Oats, or the cut-Oats, for those onely are wholsome, the others, which are unsweet, bread infirmity, those which are moist cause swelling in the Body, those which are new breed worms, and pain in the Belly, and they which are half dressed deceive the Stomach, and bring the Horse to ruine. As for the black Oats, though they are tolerable in the time of necessity, yet they make foul dung, and hinder a mans knowledge in the State of the Horses Body.

This quart of Oats you shall put into a Sieve that is somewhat less than a Riddle, and a thought bigger than a Reeing-Sieve, such a one as will let light Oats go through, but will keep a full Oat from scattering. In this Sieve you shall ree, dress, and toss your Oats very much, that there may be neither dust, nor any other foul thing in them: And so give them to the Horse, to eat; and if he eat them with a good Stomach, you may then sift, and give him as much more; and so let him rest, till it be near eleven of the Clock. Then come to the Stable again, and having rub'd the Horses head, neck, and face, you shall then take another Quart or better of Oats, and as before, toss and ree them through your Sieve, and so give them the Horse. Then closing up your windows and light, that the Horse may remain so dark as is possible, leave him till one of the Clock. And here you are to understand, that the darker you keep your Horse in your absence, the better it is; and it will occasion him to feed, lye down and take his rest, where otherwise he would not. And therefore

we commonly use to arm the Stalls wherein those Horses stand, round about, and aloft, and over the Rack, with strong Canvas, both for darknes, warmth, and that no filth may come near the Horse.

At one a Clock, or thereabouts, come to the Horse again, and sift and dress him another Quart of Oats, as before shewed, and give them him; after you have rubbed well his face, head, and nape of the neck, then putting away his Dung, and making the Stable clean and Sweet, give him a little knob of Hay, and so leave him till four a Clock in the Evening, if it be in the Summer: after three, if it be in the Winter and short Season.

At four a Clock in the Evening come again to the Stable, and having made all things clean, then bridle up the Horse; having wet the snaffle with Beer, and tied him up to the Rack, then take off his Clothes and dress him in all points, and every way as was shewed you in the Morning. After he is dressed, then clothe and saddle him as was also shewed for the Morning: then bring him forth, and do your best to make him piss and dung upon the foul Litter at the Stable-door: then mount his back, and ride him forth, as you did in the morning, but not to the Hills, if possible you can find any other plain and level ground, as Meadow, Pasture, or any other Earth, especially if it lye along by the River. But in this case you can be no Chuser, but must take the most convenient ground you can find, to make a Vertue of Necessity. There air your Horse in all points in the Evening, as you did in the Morning, galloping him both before and after his water; then racking him gently up and down, in your racking you must observe even from the Stable-door in all your passages, especially when you would have your Horse to empty himself, to let him

him smell upon every old and new dung you meet withal, for this will make him empty his Body, and repair his Stomach.

After you have watered your Horse, and spent the Evening in airing till within Night, (for nothing is more wholsome or sooner consumeth foulness, than early and late airings) you shall then air him home to the Stable-door, there alight, and whatsoever you did in the Morning either within doors or without, do the same also now at Night, and so leave the Horse on his Bridle an hour, or an hour and half; then come to him again, and as you did in the Forenoon, so do now, rub him well, draw his bridle, cleanse the Manger, put up his scattered Hay, sift him a quart and better of Oats, and give them him, and so let him rest till nine of the Clock at night.

At nine of the Clock at night, which is bed-time both for your Horse and your self, come unto him, and first rub down his legs hard with hard wisps, then with a clean cloth rub his face, head, chaps, nape of the neck and fore-parts. Then turn up his clothes, and rub over his Fillets, Buttocks, and hinder parts; then put down his clothes, and sift him a Quart of Oats, and give them him. Then put into his Rack a little bundle of Hay, (as hath been before shewed) toss up his Litter, and make his bed soft, and so betake both him and your self to your rests till the next morning.

The next morning (as the morning before) come to the Horse before day or at the break, according to the Season of the year, and do every thing without the omission of any one particular, as hath been formerly declared.

And thus you shall keep your Horse constantly for the first Fortnight; in which, by this double  
daily

daily exercise, you shall so harden his Flesh, and consume his foulness, that the next fortnight (if you be a temperate man) you may adventure to give him gentle heats.

*Now touching his Heats, you are to take to your self these four Considerations.*

**F**irst, That two heats in the Week is a sufficient proportion for any Horse, of what condition or state of body soever.

Secondly, That one Heat should ever be given upon that day in the Week on which he is to be run his Match. As thus, for Example :

If your Match is to be run upon the Monday, then your fittest heating days are Mondays and Fridays, and the Munday to be ever the sharper Heat ; both because it is the day of his Match, and there is three days respite betwixt it and the other Heat.

If the Match-day be on the Tuesday, then the Heating days are Tuesdays and Saturdays.

If it be on Wednesday, then the Heating-days are Wednesdays and Saturdays, by reason of the Sabbath.

If on the Thursday, then the Heating-days are Thursdays and Mundays ; and so of the rest.

Thirdly, you shall give no heat (except in case of extremity) in very rainy and foul weather ; but rather to differ hours, and change times, for it is unwholsome and dangerous. And therefore in case of Showres and uncertain Weather, you shall be sure to provide for your Horse a warm lin'd hood with linnen ears, and the nape of the neck lined to keep out rain ; for nothing is more dangerous than cold wet falling into the Ears, upon the nape of the Neck and the Fillets.

Fourth-

Fourthly and lastly, Observe to give your Heats (the weather being seasonable) as early in the Morning as you can, that is, by the spring of the day : but by no means in the dark, for it is to the Horse unwholsom and unpleasant, to the man a great testimony of folly, and to both an act of danger and precipitation.

*The second Fortnights Keeping.*

**N**OW to descend to your second Fortnights Keeping, touching your first approach to the Stable, and all other by-respects, as cleanting, shaking up of Litter, and the like, you shall do all things as in the first fortnight. Onely before you put on his Bridle, you shall give him a Quart or better, of clean sifted Oats, which as soon as he hath eaten, you shall then bridle him up, and dress him in all points, as was declared in the first fortnight: you shall clothe him, saddle him, air, water, and bring him home in all points, as in the first Fortnight ; onely you shall not put any Hay in his Rack to tear out ; but onely draw with your hand as much fine sweet Hay (which you shall toss and dust well) as you can well gripe, and let him as he standeth on the Bridle tear it out of your hand, which if he do greedily and earnestly, then you may give him another and another, and so let him stand on the Bridle an hour or more after. Then come to him, and after rubbing and other ceremonies, before declared, performed ; sift and dust up the quantity of a quart of Oats, and set them by ; Then take a loaf of bread, that is at least three days old, made after this manner.



*The First Bread.*

**T**AKE three pecks of clean Beans, and one peck of fine Wheat, and mix them together, and grind it to pure Meal.

Then searfe and bolt through a reasonable fine Range, and knead it up with great store of barm and lightning, but with as little water as may be; labour it in the Trough with all painfulness; tread it, break it, and after cover it warm, and let it lie a pretty space in the Trough to swell; then after knead it over again, and mold it up into big Loaves, and so bake them well, and let them soak soundly; after they are drawn from the Oven, turn the bottoms upward, and let them cool.

At three days old you may adventure to give this Bread, but hardly sooner, for nothing doth occasion surfeit, or is more dangerous than new bread: yet if necessity compel you that you must sooner give this bread, or that the bread be dank and clammy, so as the Horse taketh distaste thereat, then cut the loaf into thin shives, and lay it abroad in a Sieve to dry, and then crumbling it small amongst his Oats, you may give it without danger.

But to return to my purpose where I left: when you have taken a loaf of this Bread of three days old, you shall chip it very well, then cut it into thin shives, and break three or four shives thereof (which may countervail the quantity of the Oats) very small, and mix it with the Oats you had before sifted, and so give them to the Horse.

About Eleven of the Clock you shall come to the Horse, and having performed your by-Ceremonies before spoken of, you shall give him the same quantity  
of



of Bread and Oats as you did in the Morning, and so let him rest till the afternoon.

At one of the Clock in the afternoon (or after, if you intend not to give him an heat the next day) you shall feed him with Bread and Oats as you did in the forenoon, and so consequently every meal following for that day, observing every action and motion, as hath been before declared.

But if you intend the next day to give him an heat (to which I now bend mine aim) you shall then onely give him a quart of sweet Oats, and as soon as they are eaten, put on his bridle, and tie up his head, not forgetting all by-Ceremonies before declared. Then dress him, clothe him, saddle him, air and water him, as before shewed; also bring him home, and order him, as before shewed, onely give him no Hay at all.

After he hath stood an hour on the bridle, give him, as before, a quart of clean sifted Oats; when he hath eaten them, you shall then put on his head a sweet clean washt Muzzle, and so let him rest till nine of the Clock at night.

Now touching the use of the Muzzle, and which is the best, you shall understand, that as they are most useful, being good and rightly made; so they are dangerous and hurtful, being abused or falsly made.

The true use of them, is to keep the Horse from eating up his Litter, from gnawing upon Boards and Mud-walls, and indeed to keep him from eating any thing, but what he receiveth from your hand.

These muzzles are sometimes made of leather, and stamp'd full of holes, or else close, but they are unsavory and unwholsome; for if it be allom'd Leather, the Allom is offensive; if it be liquor'd, the

grease and ouze, are full as unpleasant; besides, they are too close and too hot, and both make a Horse sick, cause him to forbear rest, and retain his dung longer in his Body, than otherwise he would do.

The best Summer-muzzle, is the Net-muzzle, made of strong packthread, and knit exceeding thick, and with small meshes in the bottom, and so enlarged wider and wider up to the middle of the Horses head, and then bound about the top with strong tape, upon the near side a loop, and on the far side a long string of tape to be fastned unto the Horses head.

The best Winter-muzzle, is that which is made of strong double Canvas, with a round bottom, and a square Lattis-window of small tape, before both his Nostrils, down to the very bottom of the Muzzle; this must also have a loop and a string to fasten it about the Horses head.

At nine of the Clock at night coming to the Horse again, after your by-Ceremonies, before taught, are performed, give him a quart of clean sifted Oats; and as soon as he hath eaten them, put on his Muzzle, toss up his Litter, and leave him to his rest.

The next day early in the Morning before day, come to the Horse (if he be standing on his feet) but if he be laid, by no means disturb him.

Now whilst he is lying, or if he be standing, take a quart of clean Oats well sifted, and rub between your hands, and wash them in a little strong Ale or Beer; and let them not be too moist for fear of offence, and so give them to the Horse.

As soon as he hath eaten them, bridle him up, and hang by his Muzzle in some sweet place; then unclothe him and dress him as hath been before shewed; after put on his Body-cloth, and Brest-cloth, and saddle.

saddle him; then being ready to go forth with him; take his Bridle-rein and draw it over the top of the Rack, so as you may draw his head aloft. Then take a new-laid Egg, washt clean, and break it in his mouth, make him to swallow it down; then wash his tongue and mouth with a little Beer, and so lead him forth of the Stable.

At the door see if he will piss or dung, then take his back and rack him gently to the Course: ever and anon make him smell upon other Horses dung, whereby he may empty himself the better.

When you are come within a Mile, or thereabouts, of the starting Post, you shall alight from the Horses back, and take off his Body-cloth and Breast-cloth, and then girt on the Saddle again: then sending away your Groom both with those clothes, and the clean dry rubbing-clothes, let him stay at the last end of the Race till you come. Then your self rack your Horse gently up to the starting Post, and beyond; make your Horse smell to that Post, as you shall also do at the first Post, which we call the weighing Post, that he may thereby take notice of the beginning and ending of his Course. And there start your Horse roundly and sharply at near a three quarters speed; and according to his strength of body, ability of mind, and chearfulness of spirit, run him the whole Course through. But by no means do any thing in extremity, and above his wind and strength; but when you find him a little yield, then give him a little ease, so that all he doth may be done with pleasure, and not with anguish: for this manner of training will make him take delight in his labour, and so encrease it; the contrary will breed discomfort, and make exercise irksome.

Also during the time that you thus course your

Horse, you shall with all carefulness note upon what ground he runneth best ; as whether upon the Hill, whether on the smooth Earth, or on the rough, whether on the wet or on the dry, or whether on the level, or the Earth that is somewhat rising : and according as you find his nature and disposition, so maintain him for your own advantage.

When you have thus coursed the Course over strongly and swiftly, and after a little sleightly gallopt him up and down the field, to rake his wind and chear his spirit, you shall then (your Groom being ready with your clothes, and other necessaries) ride to some warm place, as under the covert of some hedge, bushes or trees, into some hollow dry ditch, pit, or other defence from the Air, and there alight from his back, and first with a grasing Knife, or scraping Knife, as some call it, made either of some broken Sword-blade, some old broken Sythe, or for want of them, a thin piece of old hard Oaken wood, fashioned like a broad long Knife with a sharp edge : And using this with both your hands, scrape off all the sweat from your Horse in every part of him, wheresoever you find any wet : And thus do till you find there will no more sweat arise ; and ever and anon move and stir the Horse up and down, and then with dry clothes rub the Horse all over exceedingly. Then take off the Saddle, and having glassed, scraped and rubbed his back, put on his Body-cloth, and his Brest-cloth, and then set on the Saddle again and girt it ; then gallop the Horse gently forth, and again a little space, ever and anon rubbing his head, neck, and body, as you sit on his back ; then walk him about the Fields and Downs to cool him, and when you find that he drieth apace, then rack him gently homeward, sometimes racking, and sometimes

times galloping. But by no means bring him to the Stable, till you find he have not one wet hair about him. When you have brought him to the Stable-door dry, there dismount, and having enticed him to piss and empty himself, then lead him into his Stall, and there tye his head gently up to the Rack with his Bridle; which done, presently, as having prepared it before, give the Horse this Scowring following, and made in this manner.

*The First Scowring.*

**T**Ake a pint of the best sweet Sack, and put thereto better than an ounce of the clearest and purest Rosin, bruised to a very fine dust, and brew them together exceeding much; then when the Sack and it is incorporated together, put thereto half a pint of the best Sallet-Oyl, and brew them also well together; then lastly, take a full ounce and an half of brown Sugar-Candy beaten to powder, and put it in also; then mull also upon the fire, and being luke-warm, and the Horse newly come in from his heat, as before I shewed you, draw his Head up to the Rack, and with an horn give him this Scowring, for it is a strong one, and this taketh away, and avoideth all manner of molten grease, and foulness whatsoever.

*The Ordering of the Horse after this Scowring.*

**A**S soon as you have given the Horse this Scowring, presently let your Groom fall to rubbing of his Legs, and do your self take off his Saddle and Clothes, and finding his body dry, run slightly

over it with your Curry-comb, after with the Brush. Then dust well, and lastly, rub all his body over exceedingly well with dry clothes, especially his head, nape of the neck, and about his heart; then clothe him up warm, as at his other ordinary times, and wisp him round with great warm wisps: and if you throw over him a little loose Blanket, it will not be amiss in these extraordinary times, especially if the Season be cold.

Your Horse must fast full two hours after the receipt of his Scowring; but yet depart not your self, or your Groom out of the Stable, but stay and keep the Horse stirring and waking, partly by extraordinary noise and clamour, and partly by action about him, or making him move up and down, as he standeth. There is nothing more hurtful to the Horse, or working of the Medicine, than sleep, stilness and rest, and nothing better or more available to the working of the Medicine, than action and motion: for they make the spirits lively, and stir up those humors which should be removed, when rest keeps the spirits dull, and the humours so inclosed and reserved, that nature hath nothing to work upon.

After your Horse hath fasted upon his Bridle two hours, or more, then you shall take a handful of Wheat-ears, being your Pollard, that is, without rough beards, and coming to the Horse, first handle the roots of his ears, then put your hands under his clothes against his heart, upon his Fillets, Flanks, and on the nether part of his Thighs; and if you find any new sweat to arise, or any coldness of sweat, or if you see his body beat, or his breath move fast, then forbear to give him any thing, for it is a pregnant sign that there is much foulness stirred up, on which the Medicine working with a conquering



## Of the Running Horse.

23

ring quality, the Horse is brought to a little heart-sickness. Therefore in this case you shall only take off his Bridle, and put on his Collar, then toss up his Litter that he may lie down, and then absent your self (having made the Stable dark and still) for two hours more at the least, which is the utmost end of that sickness.

But if you find no such offence, then you shall profer him the Ears of Wheat by three or four together; and if he eat this handful, then give him another.

After he hath eaten the Wheat-ears, you shall then give him a little bundle of Hay, such as hath been before declared, and draw his Bridle, rubbing his head well.

An hour or better after he hath had his Hay, you shall sift him a quart of the best Oats, and to them you shall put two or three handfuls of spelted Beans, which you shall cause to be ree'd and dressed as clean as possible, from all manner of hulls, dust, and filth whatsoever, so as there may be nothing but the clean spelted Beans themselves. To these Oats and Beans you shall break two or three good thick slices of Bread, clean chipt, and give all unto the Horse, and so leave him to his rest for near three hours or thereabouts.

At evening, before you dress your Horse, give him the like quantity of Oats, spelted Beans and bread; and when he hath eaten them, then bridle him up and dress him, as before shewed; after he is drest, clothe him up, for you shall neither saddle him, nor ride him forth; for you shall understand that this Evening after his heat, the Horse being inwardly foul, and the Scowring yet working in his body, he may not receive any water at all.



After the Horse is drest, and hath stood an hour and half upon his Bridle, you shall then take three pints of clean sifted Oats, and wash them in strong Ale or Beer, and so give them to the Horse; for this will inwardly cool and refresh him, as if he had drunk water.

After he hath eaten all his washt meat, and rested upon it a little space, you shall then at his feeding times, which have been spoken of before, with Oats and spelt Beans, or Oats and Bread, or all together, or each severall and simple of it self (as you shall find the Stomach of the Horse best addicted to receive it) feed him that Night in a plentiful manner, and leave a Know of Hay in the Rack when you go to your Bed.

The next day, very early as may be, first feed, then drest, after clothe, saddle, then air him abroad, and water him, as hath been before shewed; after bring him home, and feed him with Oats, spelt Beans, and Bread, as was last of all declared; onely very little Hay, and keep your Heating-days, and the preparation the day before, in such wise as hath been also formerly declared, without any omission or addition. Thus you shall spend the second Fortnight, in which your Horse having received four Heats soundly given unto him, and four Scowrings, there is no doubt but his Body will be inwardly clean; you shall then the third Fortnight order him according to these Rules which hereafter follow;

#### *The Third Fortnights Keeping*

**T**HE third Fortnight you shall make his Bread finer than it was formerly. *As Thus.*

*The Second Bread.*

**Y**OU shall take two pecks of clean Beans, and two pecks of fine Wheat, grind them on the black stones, searce them through a fine Range, and knead it up with Barm, and great store of Lightning, working it in all points, and baking it in the same sort as was shewed you in the former Bread.

With this Bread, having the crust cut clean away, and being old (as was before shewed) with clean sifted Oats, and with clean drest spelt Beans, you shall feed your Horse this Fortnight, as you did in the Fortnight before: you shall observe his dressing, airing, and hours of feeding, as in the former Fortnight; also you shall observe his Heating-days, and the day before his heat, as in the former Fortnight, onely with these differences.

First, you shall not give his heats so violently as before, but with a little more pleasure; that is to say, if the first heat be of force and violence, the second heat shall be of pleasure and ease, and indeed none at all to overstrain the Horse, or to make his body sore.

Next, you shall not after his heats, when he cometh home, give him any more of the former Scowring, but instead thereof, you shall instantly upon the end of your heat, after the Horse is a little cool'd, and clothed up, and in the same place where you rub him, by drawing his head up aloft as you sit in the Saddle, or raising it up otherwise, give him a Ball somewhat bigger than a French Wall-nut, hull and all, of that Confection which is mentioned before, of the true manner of making of Cordial-Balls.

*The Fourth and Last Fortnights Keeping.*

**N**OW to return again to my purpose, having thus spent the three first Fortnights, you shall the fourth and last Fortnight make your Horses Bread much finer than either of the former.

*The Last Bread.*

**T**AKE three pecks of fine Wheat, and put in one peck of clean Beans ; grind them to powder on the black stones, and bolt them through the finest Bolter you can get ; then knead it up with very sweet Ale-barm, and new strong Ale, and the barm beaten together, and also the Whites of at least twenty Eggs: in any wise no water at all, but instead thereof some small quantity of new Milk. Then work it up, and labour it with all painfulness that may be, as was shewed in the first Bread ; then bake it, and order it, as was declared in the other.

With this Bread (having the crust cut clean away, and with Oats well sunned, beaten, and rubbed over with your hands, then new winnowed and sifted, and most finely drest, that there may be neither light ones nor foul ones, nor any false Grain amongst them ; and with the purest spelted Beans that can be tryed out) feed your Horse at his ordinary feeding times, in such wise as you did in the Fortnight last mentioned before.

You shall keep his Heating-days the first week of this last Fortnight, in such wise as you did in the former Fortnight: but the last week you shall forbear one heat, and not give him any heat five days before

before his Match at the least, only you shall give him long and strong Airings to keep him in wind.

You shall not need this Fortnight to give him any Scowring at all.

If this Fortnight, Morning and Evening, you burn upon a Chafing-dish of Coals in your Stable of the purest Olibanum or Frankincense mixt with Storax and Benjamin, to perfume and sweeten the Room, you shall find it exceeding wholesome for the Horse, and he will take delight therein.

In this Fortnight, when you give your Horse any waht meat, wash it not in Ale or Beer, but in the Whites of Eggs or Muskadine, for that is more wholesome and less purifie.

This Fortnight give your Horse no Hay at all, but what he taketh out of your hand after his heats, and that must be in little quantity, and clean dusted and drest, unless he be an exceeding evil Feeder, and marvellous tender, and a great belly-looser.

The last week of this Fortnight, if your Horse be a foul Feeder, you must use the Muzzle continually; but if he be a clean Feeder, and will touch no Litter, then three days before your Match is a convenient time for the use of the Muzzle.

The Morning the day before your Match, feed well both before and after Airing, and Water, as at other times, before noon; and after noon, scant his proportion of meat a little.

Before and after Evening Airing, feed as at noon, and water as at other times, but be sure to come home before Sun-set.

This day you shall cool the Horse, shoe the Horse, and do all extraordinary things of Ornament about him; Provided there be nothing to give him offence, or to hinder him in feeding, or any other material

material or beneficial action; for I have heard some Horsemen say, that when they had shooed their Horse with light Shooes, and done other actions of ornament about them, the night before the Course, their Horse hath taken such special notice thereof, that they have refused both to eat and lie down. But you must understand that those Horses must be old, and long experienced in this exercise, or they cannot reach at these subtile apprehensions: For my part, touching the nice and strait platting up of Horses Tails in the manner of Sackers or Docks (which is now in general use) howsoever the ornament may appear great to the Eye, yet I do not much affect it, because I know, if an ignorant hand have the workmanship thereof, he may many ways give offence to the Horse, and in avoiding cumberfomness, breed a great deal of more cumber; therefore I wish every one rather to avoid curiosity, which they call necessary Ornament, than by those false graces to do injury to the Horse.

Now for the necessary and indifferent things which are to be done unto the Horse, I would rather have them done the day before, than on the Morning of the Course, because I would have the Horse that morning to find no trouble or vexation.

The next morning, which is the Match-day, come to your Horse before day, take off his Muzzle, rub his head well, and give him a pretty quantity of Oats masht in Muskadine, if he will eat them, or else in the Whites of Eggs; or if he refuse both, then try him with fine drest Oats, dry, and mixt with a little Wheat, or with your lightest Bread: as for Beans, forbear them: of any of these foods give him such a quantity as may keep life and soul together: then if he be a Horse that is an evil emptier,  
and

and will retain meat long, you may walk him abroad, and in the places where he used to empty, there entice him to empty; which as soon as he hath done, bring him home, put on his Muzzle, and let him rest, till you have warning to make ready and lead forth: but if he be a good and free emptying Horse, then you need not stir him, but let him lie quiet.

When you have warning to prepare for leading out, then come to your Horse, and having washed his snaffle in a little Muskadine, take off his Muzzle, and bridle him up: But before you bridle, if you think the Horse too empty, you may give him three or four mouthfuls of the washt meat last spoken of, then bridle up, then dress: after having pitcht your Saddle and Girths with Shoomakers Wax, set it on his back, and girt it as gently as may be, so as he may have a feeling, but no straitness. Then lay a very white sheet over the Saddle next his skin, and over it his ordinary clothes, then his Body-cloth and Breast-cloth, and wisp them round about with soft wisps; then if you have a Counter-pane, or cloth of State for braveries sake, let it be fastned above all. When this is done, and you are ready to draw out, then take half a pint of the best Muskadine, and give it him with an Horn, and so lead him away.

In all your leadings upon the Course, of gentle and calm motions, suffering the Horse to smell upon every dung, that thereby he may empty himself; and in special places of advantage, as where you find rushes, long grass, ling, or heath, or the like, walk your Horse, and entice him to piss: But if you find no such help, then in special places upon the Course, and chiefly towards the latter end; and having used the same means before, break some of your  
wisps



wisps under the Horses belly, and so make him piss.

And in your leading, if any white or thick foam or froth arise about the Horses mouth, you shall with a clean handkerchief wipe it away: carrying a small bottle of clear water about you, wash your Horses mouth now and then therewith.

When you come to the place of starting, before you unclothe the Horse, rub and chafe his Legs with hard wisps; then pick his feet, and wash his mouth with water, then unclothe him; mount his Rider, start fair, and then refer all the rest to God's good will and pleasure.

*General Observations, Helps and Advertisements, for any man when he goeth about to buy an Horse.*

**T**Here is nothing more difficult or intricate in all the Art of Horsemanship, than to set down constant and uncontrollable Resolutions, by which to bind every man's mind to an unity of consent in the buying of an Horse: For according to the old Adage, *That which is one man's meat, is another man's poison*; what one affects, another dislikes. But to proceed according to the Rule of Reason, the precepts of the Ancients, and the modern practice of our present conceived Opinions, I will, as freely as I can, shew you those Observations and Advertisements which may strengthen and fortifie you in any hard and difficult Election.

First therefore, you are to observe, that if you will elect an Horse for your heart's contentment, you are to take to your self this principal consideration: Namely, the end and purpose for which you Elect him; as whether for the Wars, for Running, Hunting, Travel, Draught, or Burthen; every one having  
their



their several Characters, and their several faces, both of beauty and uncomeliness.

But because there is but one Truth, and one Perfection, I will, under the description of the perfect Horse, that is untainted, shew all the imperfections and attain:tures that either nature or mischance can put upon the Horse of greatest deformity.

Let me then advise you that intend to buy a Horse, to acquaint your self well with all the true shapes and excellencies which belong to an Horse, whether it be in his natural and true proportion, or in any accidental or outward increase or decrease of any Limb or Member; And from their contraries, to gather all things whatsoever that may give dislike or offence.

To begin therefore with the first Principles of Election, you shall understand, that they are divided into two special heads: the one general, the other, particular.

The general Rule of Election, is first the end for which you buy, then his breed or generation, his colour, his face and his stature: and these are said to be general; because the first, which is the end for which you buy, is a thing shut up onely in your own Breast.

The other, which is his breed, you must either take it from faithful report, your own knowledge, or from some known and certain Characters, by which one strain or one Country is distinguished from another: As the *Neapolitan* is known by his hook-Nose, the *Spaniard* by his small Limbs, the *Barbary* by his fine Head, the *Dutch* by his rough Legs, the *English* by his general strong knitting together, and so forth of divers others.

As for his colour, although there is no colour exempt

empt utterly from goodnes, for I have seen good of all, yet there are some better reputed than others; as the Dapple-gray for beauty, the Brown-bay for service, the Black silver-hairs for courage, and the Lyard or true mixt Roan, for countenance: as for the Sorrel, the Black without White, and the unchangeable Iron-gray, they are reputed cholerick; the Bright-bay, the Flea-bitten, and the Black with white marks, are Sanguinists; the Blank-white, the Yellow-dun, the Kite-glew'd, and the Pidebald, are Flegmatick; and the Chesnut, the Mouse-dun, the Red-bay, and the Blew-gray, are Melancholy.

Now for his Pace, which is either Trot, Amble, Rack, or Gallop, you must refer it to the end also for which you buy; as if he be for the Wars, Hunting, Running, or your own private disposition, then the Trot is most tolerable. And this motion you shall know by a cross moving of the Horses Limbs, as when the far fore-Leg and the near hinder-Leg, or the near fore-Leg and the far hinder-Leg move and go forward in one instant. And in this motion, the neater the Horse taketh his Limbs from the ground, the opener, the evener, and the shorter he treadeth, the better his pace: for to take up his feet sturnly; shews stumbling and lameness; to tread narrow or cross, shews enterfering or falling; to step uneven, shews toil and weariness; to tread long, shews over-reaching.

Now if you elect for ease, great Persons Seats, or long Travel, then Amble is required; and this motion is contrary to trotting: for now both the feet on one side must move equally together, that is, his far fore-Leg, and the far hinder-Leg; and this motion must go just, large, smooth and nimble: for to tread  
false

false, takes away all ease; to tread short, rides no ground; to tread rough, shews rolling; and to tread nimbly, shews a false pace that never continueth, as also lameness.

If you elect for Buck-hunting, for galloping on the High-way, for Post, Hackney, or the like, then a racking pace is required: and this motion is the same that Ambling is, onely it is in a swifter time and shorter tread; and though it ride not so much ground, yet it is a little more easie.

Now to all these parts must be joyned a gallop (which naturally every Trotting and Racking Horse hath) the Ambler is a little unapt thereunto, because the motions are both one, so that being put to a greater swiftness of pace than naturally he hath been acquainted withal, he handles his legs confusedly and out of order: but being tamed gently, and made to know and understand the motion, he will as well undertake it, as any Trotting Horse whatsoever. Now in a good Gallop, you are to observe these vertues:

First, That the Horse which taketh his feet nimbly from the ground, but doth not raise them high, that neither rolleth, nor beats himself, that stretcheth out his fore-Legs, follows nimbly with his hinder, and neither cutteth under the Knee (which we call the swift cut) nor crosseth, nor claps one foot upon another, and ever leadeth with his far fore-foot, and not with the near;

This Horse is said ever to gallop most comely, and most true, and is the fittest for speed, or any other like imployment.

If he gallop round, and raise his fore-feet, he is then said to gallop strongly, but not swiftly, and is fittest for the great Saddle, the Wars, and strong encounters.

If he gallop slow, yet sure, he will serve for the high-way; but if he labour his feet confusedly, and gallop painfully, then he is good for no galloping service; besides it shews some obscure lameness.

Lastly, touching his stature, it must be referred to your own judgment, and the end for which you buy him; ever observing, that the biggest and strongest are fittest for strong occasions, as great burthens, strong draughts, and double carriage; the middle size for pleasure, and general employments; and the least for ease, street-walks, and Summer-hackney.

Now touching the particular Rule of election, it is contained in the Discovery of natural deformities, accidental, outward or inward hidden mischiefs, which are so many, yea infinite, that it is a world of work to explain them; yet for satisfaction sake, I will, in as methodical manner as I can, briefly, and according to the best conceited Opinions, shewn or can be observed in this occasion.

First therefore, When an Horse is brought unto you to buy, being satisfied for his breed, his pace and colour, then see him stand naked before you, and placing your self before his face, take a strict view of his countenance, and the chearfulness thereof, for it is an excellent Glass wherein to see his goodness: *As thus*, If his Ears be small, thin, sharp, pricked, and moving, and if they be long, yet well set on, and well carried, it is a mark of beauty, goodness, and metal; but if they be thick, laved, or lolling, wide set on, and unmoving, then are they signs of dullness, doggedness, and ill nature.

If his face be clean, his forehead swelling outward, the mark or feather in his face set high, as above his eyes, or at the top of his eyes; if he have a  
white

white star, or a white rach of an indifferent size, and even placed, or a white snip on his nose, all are marks of beauty and goodness: but if his face be fat, cloudy or scouling, his fore-head flat as a trencher, which we call mare-faced, the mark in his fore-head stand low, as under his eyes; if his star or rach stand awry or in an evil posture, or instead of a snip, his nose be raw and unhairy, or his face generally bald, all are signs of deformity: if his eyes be round, bright, black, shining, staring, or starting from his head; if the black of the Eye fill the pit, or outward circumference, so that in the moving none (or very little) of the white appeareth; all are signs of beauty, goodness and metal; but if his Eyes be uneven, and of a wrinkled proportion; if they be little (which we call Pig-eyed) both are uncomely signs of weakness: if they be red and fiery, take heed of moon-eyes, which is the next door to blindness; if white and walled, it shews a weak sight, and unnecessary starting or finding of boggards; if with white specks, take heed of the pearl, pin and web; if they water or shew bloody, it shews bruises; and if they matter, they shew old over-riding and festered Rheums, or violent strains; if they look dead or dull, or all hollow and much sunk, take heed of blindness, at the best the Beast is of an old decrepit Generation; if the black fill not the pit, but the white is always appearing, or if in moving the white, the black be seen in equal quantity, it is a sign of weakness and dogged disposition.

If handling of his Cheeks or Chaps, you find the bones lean and thin, the space wide between them, the thropple or wind-pipe big as you can gripe, and the void place without knots or kernels; and generally, the jaws so open, that the neck seemeth to



couch within them, they are all excellent signs of great wind, courage and soundness of head and body; But if the chaps be fat and thick, the space between them closed up with gross substance, and the thropple little, all are signs of short wind, and much inward foulness; if the void place be full of knots and kernels, take heed of the strangle or glanders, at least the Horse is not without a foul cold.

If his jaws be so strait, that his neck swelleth about them; if it be no more but natural, it is onely an uncomely sign of strait wind, and pursiness, or grossness; but if the swelling be long and close to his chops like a whetstone, then take heed of the Uvies, or some other unnatural imposthume.

If his nostrils be open, dry, wide and large, so as upon any straining the very inward redness is discovered; and if his Muzzle be small, his mouth deep, and his lips equally meeting, they are all good signs of wind, heat and courage: but if his nostrils be strait, his wind is little; if his Muzzle be gross, his spirit is dull; if his mouth be shallow, he will nevey carry a bit well; and if his upper lip will not reach his nether, old age or infirmity hath marked him for carrion; and if his Nose be moist and dropping, if it be clear water it is a cold; if foul matter, then beware the glanders; if both nostrils run, it is hurtful; but if one, then most dangerous.

Touching his Teeth, and their vertues, they are at large set down in another Chapter touching the Horses age: onely remember you never buy an Horse that wanteth any, for as good lose all as one.

From his Head look down to his Breast, and look that it be broad, out-swelling, and adorned with many feathers, for that shews strength and endurance: the little Breast is uncomely, and shews weakness;  
the

the narrow Breast is apt to stumble, fall, and enterfere before; and the Breast that is hidden inward, and wanteth the beauty and division of many feathers, shews a weak armed heart, and a Breast that is unwilling and unfit for any toyl or strong labour.

Next look down from his Elbow to his Knee, and see that those fore-thighs be rush-grown, well horned within, sinewy flesh, and without swelling, for they are good signs of strength; the contrary shews weakness, and are unnatural,

Then look on his Knees, that they carry an equal and even proportion, be clean, sinewy, and close knit, for they are good and comely; if one be bigger and rounder than another, the Horse hath received mischief; if they be gross, the Horse is gouty; and if they have scars or hair broken, it is a true mark of a stumbling Jade, and a perpetual faller.

From his Knees look down his Legs to his Pasterns, and if you find his Legs clean, fat, and sinewy, and the inward bought of his Knee without a seam, or hair broken, then he shews good shape and soundness; but if on the inside there are excretions, if under his knee be Scabs on the inside, it is the swift cut, and he will ill endure galloping; if above his Pasterns on the inside you find Scabs, it shews enterfering. But if the Scabs be generally over his Legs, it is either extreme foul keeping, or a spice of the mangy; if his Legs be fat, round and fleshy, he will never endure labour; if on the inward bought of his knee you find seams, Scabs, or hair broken, it shews a mallander, which is a cankerous ulcer.

Look then on his Pasterns, the first must be clean and well knit together, the other must be short, strong, and upright standing: for if the first be big or



swell'd, take heed of the sinew-strains and gurding ; if the other be long, weak, or bending, the limbs will hardly carry the body without tiring.

For the hoofs in general, they would be black, smooth, tough, rather a little long than round and hollow, and full sounding ; for a white hoof is tender, and carries a shoe ill ; a rough, gross, seam'd hoof shews old age or over-heating ; brittle hoofs will carry no shoe ; an extraordinary round hoof is ill for foul ways or deep hunting ; a flat hoof that is pummish shews foundering ; and an hoof that is empty and hollow sounding shews a decayed inward part, by reason of some wound or dry foundering. As for the Crownet of the hoof, if the hair be smooth and close, and the flesh fat and even, all is perfect ; but if the hair be staring, the skin scabbed, the flesh rising, then look for a ring-bone, a Crown-scab, or like mischief.

After this, stand by his side, and first look to the setting on of his head, and see that it stand neither too high nor too low, but in a direct line ; and that his neck be small at the setting on, and long, growing deeper and deeper till it come to the shoulders, with an high, strong, and thin Crest ; and his Mane thin, long, soft, and somewhat curling, for these are beautiful Characters ; whereas to have the head ill set on, is the greatest deformity ; to have any bigness or swelling in the nape of the neck, shews the pole-evil, or beginning of a Fistula : to have a short thick neck like a Bull, to have it falling at the withers, to have a low, a weak, a thick or falling Crest, shews want both of strength and metal ; and to have much hair on the Mane shews intolerable dalsness, to have it too thin shews fury, and to have none, or to shed, shews the worm in the Mane, the itch, or else mangies. Look

Look then to the chine of his back, that it be broad, even and straight, his ribs well compassed, and bending outward, his fillets upright, strong and short, and not above four fingers between his last rib and his knuckle-bone: let his Body be well let down, yet hidden without his Ribs, and let his Stones be close thrust up to his Body, for all these are marks of good perfection. Whereas to have his chine narrow, he will never carry a Saddle without wounding; and to have it bending or Saddle-backt shews weakness; to have his Ribs fat, there is no liberty for wind; to have his fillets hanging long or weak, he will never climb an hilliwell, nor carry burthen; and to have his Belly clung up and gant, or his Stones hanging down close or side, they are both signs of sickness, tenderness, or foundering in the Body, and unaptness for labour. Then look upon his buttock, and see that it be round, full, plump, and in an even level with his body; or if long, that it be well raised behind, and spread forth at the setting on of the Tail, for these are comely and beautiful: the narrow pin-buttock, the Hog or Swine-rump, and the falling or downlet-buttock, are full of deformity, and shew both an injury in nature, and that they are neither fit nor becoming for Pad, Foot-cloth, or Pillow.

Then look to his hinder thighs, or gascoyns, that they be well let down, even to the middle joynt, thick, brawny, full and swelling, for that is a great argument of strength and goodness; whereas the clean, lank, slender thigh, shews disability and weakness. Then look upon the middle joynt behind, and see if it be nothing but skin and bone, veins and sinews, and rather a little bending than too strait, then it is perfect as it should be; but if it hath

chaps or sores in the inward bought or bending, then it is a Sellander.

If the joynt be swell'd generally all over, then he hath gotten a blow or bruise; if the swelling be particular, as in the plot or hollow part, or on the inside, and the vein full and proud; if the swelling be short, it is a blood-spaven; if hard, it is a bone-spaven; but if the swelling be just behind, below the knuckle, then it is a curb.

Then look to his hinder-Legs, and if they be clean, fat, and sinewy, then all is well, but if they be fat, they will not endure labour; if they be swell'd, the grease is molten into them; if they be scabbed above the Pasterns, he hath the Scratches; if he have chaps under his Pasterns, he hath the Pains, and none of these but are dangerous and noisome.

Lastly, for the setting on of his Tail, where there is a good Buttock, there the Tail can never stand ill, and where there is an ill Buttock, there the Tail can never stand well, for it ought to stand broad, high, flat, and a little touched inward.

Thus I have shewed you true shapes, and true deformities; you may in your choice please your own fancy.

*Certain Infallible Helps and Cures for those Infirmities  
which are most dangerous, and do commonly attend  
all Horses; especially the Running Horse,*

*First, of Sickness in general.*

**W**Hensoever upon any occasion you shall find your Horse to droop in Countenance, to forsake his meat, or to shew any apparent sign of sickness; if they be not great, you may forbear to let blood, because where blood is spent, the spirits are spent also, and they are not easily recovered; but if the signs be great and dangerous, then by all means let blood instantly; and for three Mornings together, the Horse being fasting, give him half an ounce of the Powder called *Diabexaple*, brewed either in a pint of the purest and finest Syrrup of Sugar, being two degrees above the ordinary Molosses, or for want thereof Molosses will serve the turn, or where all are wanting, you may take a pint either of Carduus-water, or else Dragon-water, or a quart of sweetest and strongest Ale-wort; and this must be given him in a Horn, and if the Horse have ability of body, ride him in some warm place after it, and let him fast near two hours more. At noon give him a sweet Mash, clothe warm, and let him touch no cold water.

Now for the exact and true making of this Powder, which I call *Diabexaple*, because no man, that I know, either Apothecary or other, doth at this day make it truly, partly because it is an experiment lately come to my knowledge by conference with learned Physicians, and partly because our Medicine-makers  
are

are in Horse-Physick less curious than they should be; through which errors there is produced to the world abundance of false mixtures; which both deceive the honest Horse-master, kill the harmless Horse, and disgrace the well-meaning Farrier.

To repair all which, I will here set down at large the true manner of making this admirable Powder, together with the Vertues and Operations thereof.

**T**ake of the grains of Paradise, of Ivory and Myrrh, of the roots of Enula Campana, of Turmericke and Gentian, of each a like quantity; then beat and searse them into a subtil Powder, and give the Horse such a quantity, as is before directed. This resisteth the putrefaction of humours, comforts and strengthens the inward parts, opens obstructions, helps the Lungs, and if taken in time, not onely recovers the Horse, but preventeth many other distempers.

**C**ertain necessary Observations and Advantages for every Keeper to observe in sundry accidents.

**T**here is no unreasonable creature of pleasure subject to so many disastrous chances of Fortune as the Horse, and especially the Running Horse, both by reason of the multiplicity of Diseases belonging unto them, as also the violence of their exercise, and the nice tenderness of their Keeping. And therefore it becometh every Keeper to be aided with such Observations as may discern mischiefs, and those helps which may amend them when they happen.

*Observations for sickness and health.*

**T**He first Observation therefore that I would arm your Keeper withal, is to discern sickness from health. *As thus :*

If you find in your Horse heaviness of countenance, extreme looseness, or extreme costiveness, shortness of breath, loathing of meats, dull and imperfect Eyes, rotten or dry cough, staring hair, or hair unnaturally discover'd, staggering pace, frantick behaviour, yellowness of the eyes and skin, faint or cold sweat, extraordinary lying down or beating, or looking back at his body, alteration of qualities and gestures, no casting his coat, leanness, hidebound, and the like; all these are apparent signs of distemperature or sickness.

*Observations from the Dung.*

**I**T is necessary that our Keeper observe the Horses Dung, for it is the best tell-truth of an Horses inward parts; yet he must not judge it by a general opinion, but a private discourse with himself, how the Horse hath been fed, because food is the onely thing.

*As thus :*

If the Dung be clear, crisp, and of a pale and whitish yellow complexion, hanging together without separation, more than as the weight breaks it in the falling, being neither so thin that it will run, nor so thick but it will a little flat on the ground, and indeed both in favour and substance somewhat resembling a sound man's ordure : Then is the Horse  
clean,



clean, well fed, and without imperfection ; if it be well coloured, yet fall from him in round knots or pellets ; but if all his Dung be alike, then it is a sign of foul feeding, and he hath either too much Hay, or eats too much Litter, and too little Corn.

If his Dung be in round pellets, and blackish or brown, it shews inward heat in the Body ; if it be grease, it shews foulness, and that grease is molten but cannot come away ; if he doth avoid grease in gross substance with his dung, if the grease be white and clear, then it comes away kindly, and there is no danger ; but if it be yellow and putrified, then the grease hath lain long in his Body, and sickness may follow if not prevented : if his dung be red and hard, then the Horse hath had too strong heats, and costiveness will follow ; if it be pale and loose, it shews inward coldness of body, or too much moist feeding.

*Observations from the Urine.*

**A**S the Keeper hath thus a principal respect to the Horses Dung, so he shall take some little Notes from the Urine also: and though they be not altogether so material as the other, because, according to the opinion of Physicians, *Urina est Meretrix*, Urine is a Deceiver ; yet it hath some true faces. *As thus* : The Urine which is of a pale yellowish colour, rather thick than thin, of a strong smell, and a piercing condition, is an healthful, sound and good Urine ; but if you find any Note or Complexion contrary to these, then in the Horse is some imperfection. *As thus* : If the Urine be of an high and ruddy complexion, either like blood, or inclining to blood, then hath the Horse either had too  
fore

fore heats, been over-ridden, or ridden too early after Winter-Grass; if the Urine be of an high complexion, clear and transparent, like old March-Beer, then the Horse is inflamed in his Body, and hath taken some surfeit.

If the Urine carry a white Cream on the top, it shews a weak Back, and a Consumption of Seed.

A green Urine shews a Consumption of the Body.

An Urine with bloody streaks shews an Ulcer in the Kidneys; and a black thick cloudy Urine shews Death and Mortality.

*Observations in Feeding.*

**A** Gain, Our Keeper must observe, that if there be any meat, drink, or other nourishment, which he knoweth good for the Horse, if the Horse refuse to take it, in this case he shall not violently thrust it upon the Horse, or by force cram him therewith; but by gentle degrees and cunning enticements, and by process of time win him thereunto; tempting him when he is most hungry or most thirsty; and if he get but a bit at a time or a sup at a time, it will soon encrease to a greater quantity, and ever let him have less than he desireth. And that he may the sooner be brought to it, mix the meat he loveth best, with that he loveth worst; the drink he loveth the best, with that he loveth the worst, till both be made alike familiar, and so shall the Horse be a stranger to nothing that is good or wholesome.

*Observations in case of Lameness.*

**A** Gain, Our Keeper must observe, if his Horse be subject to Lameness or stiffness of joynts  
or

or sinews, surbayting or tenderness of feet, first to give him his Heats upon soft and smooth carpet-Earth, and to forbear stony ground, hard high-ways, cross Furrows, till extremity compel him.

*Observations from the State of the Horses Body.*

**I**T is good for our Keeper to observe, that the strongest estate of Body (which I account the highest and fullest of flesh, so it be good, hard, and without inward foulness) to be the best and ablest for the performance of Wagers: yet he must herein take to himself two considerations; the one, the shape of the Horses Body; the other, his inclination and manner of feeding.

For the shape of Horses Bodies, there be some Horses that be round, plump, and close knit together; so that they will appear fat and well shaped, when they are lean and in poverty; others are raw-boned, slender and loose knit together, and will appear lean, deformed, and in poverty, when they are fat, foul, and full of gross humours.

So likewise their inclinations: some Horses (as the first before-named) will feed outwardly, and will carry a thick Rib, when they are inwardly as clean as my be, and without all manner of foulness.

There be others (as the latter) that will appear clean to the eyes, and shew nothing but skin and bone, when they are full of inward fatness, and have guts as full as may be. In this case the Keeper hath two helps to advantage his knowledge, the one outward, the other inward.

The outward help is the outward handling and feeling of the Horses body, generally over all his Ribs, but particularly upon his short and hindmost Ribs:

**Ribs** : if his flesh generally handle soft and loose, and your fingers sink into it as into down; then is the Horse foul without question : but if generally it be hard and firm, onely upon the hindmost Rib it handleth soft and downy, then it is a pregnant sign, there is grease and foul matter within the Horse, which must be avoided, how lean or poor soever he appear in outward speculation.

The inward help is onely sharp exercise and strong scowrings : the first will dissolve and melt the foulness, the latter will bring it away in abundance.

If your Horse be fat and thick, and as it were closed up between the Chaps, or if his Jaws handle fleshy and full, it is a sign of much foulness both in the Head and Body; but if he handle thin, clean, and onely with some lumps or small Kernels within his Chaps, then it is onely a sign of some cold or poze newly taken.

*Observations from the Privy Parts.*

**I**T is good for our Keeper to observe his Horses stones, if he be stoned : for if they hang down side or long from his Body, then is the Horse out of lust and heart, and is either sick of grease or other foul humours ; but if they be close couched up, and lie hid in a very small room, then is the Horse in health and good plight.

*Observations from the Limbs.*

**I**T is good for our Keeper to observe every night, before he runs either Match or Heat, to bathe his Horses Legs well, from above the Knees, and above the Cambrels downwards, with either Dogs-grease

grease, which is the best, or Trotters Oyl, which is the second, or the purest clarified Hogs grease that can be got, which is most tolerable ; and to work it in with his hands, and not with melting at the fire ; and what he gets not in the first night, will be got in the next Morning ; and what he gets not in the next Morning, will be got in when he comes to un-clothe at the end of the course ; so that you shall need to use Oyntment but once, but the Fricase or Rubbing, as often as you find opportunity.

*Observations for the giving of Water.*

**O**UR Keeper shall observe, that albeit I give no directions for the watering of his Horse in the Evening after his heat, yet he may in any of the three latter Fortnights ( finding his Horse clean, and his grease consumed or gone away ) somewhat late at Night, as about six of the Clock, give his Horse water in reasonable quantity, being made Milk-warm, and fasting an hour after it.

Also, if the Weather be unseasonable, then you shall at your watering hours water in the house with warm water, putting a little quantity of hot water into a greater of cold, and so make it Milk-warm; if you throw a handful of Wheat-meal, Bran, or Oat-meal finely pounded, but Oat-meal is the best.

*Observations in the choice of Ground to run on.*

**O**UR Keeper shall observe, that if the ground whereon he is to run his Match be dangerous, and apt for strains, slips, over-reaches, and the like, that then he is not to give all his heats thereon ; but having made his Horse acquainted with the nature there-

thereof, then either to take part of the course, as a mile, two or three, according to the goodness of the ground; and so to run his Horse forth and back again, which we call turning heats: Provided always, that he end his heat at the weighing-Post, and that he make not his course less, but rather more in quantity than that he must run; but if, for some special occasions, he like not part of the Course, then he may many times (but not ever) give his heats upon any other good ground, either forth-right and turning, or round about any spacious and large Field, where the Horse may lay down his Body, and run at pleasure.

*Observations from Sweating.*

OUR Keeper shall take special regard in all his airing, heating, and all manner of Exercise and Motion whatsoever, to the sweating of his Horse, and to the occasions of his sweating; as if an Horse sweat upon little or no occasion, as walking foot-pace, standing still in the Stable, or the like, it is then apparent that the Horse is faint, foul fed, and wanteth exercise; but if upon good occasion, as strong heats, and the like, he sweat, if his sweat is white, frothy, and like soap-suds, then is the Horse inwardly foul, and wanteth also exercise; but if the sweat be black, and as it were onely water thrown upon him, then is the Horse in good lust and good case.

*Observations from the Horse's Hair.*

OUR Keeper shall observe well his Horses Hair in general, but especially his Neck and those parts which are uncovered; and if they be sleek,  
E smooth



smooth, and close, then is the Horse in good case; but if they be rough and staring, or any way unnaturally discoloured; then is the Horse inwardly cold at the heart, and wanteth Cloaths and warm keeping, or else there is some sickness creeping upon him.

Many other Observations there be; but these are most material, and I hope sufficient for any reasonable understanding.

---

**MATTHEW**

---

---

# MATTHEW HODSON'S MEDICINES.

---

## *A Medicine for the Glanders.*

**T**Ake a quart of red Vinegar, being no Wine-vinegar; put it over the fire, and put there-to two Spoonfuls of English Honey, two Spoonfuls of Elecampane, beaten into fine Powder, and searse it through a fine Searler; and as much Roch-Allom as the bigness of an Egg, beaten into fine Powder; half a pint of Sallet-Oyl: put in your Sallet-Oyl after all these have boyled together one quarter of an hour, then take it off the fire, and let it stand until it be Milk-warm, then give your Horse six Spoonfuls in each Nostril with a little horn: after you have given this drink, ride him two or three turns and no more, then tye his head down to his foot for the space of four hours; then let him fast four hours; you must give this drink at nine several times, being three days betwixt every drink; every second day after he hath had his drink, give him Chickens Guts warm, rolled in beaten Bay-Salt, and put them down his Throat, giving him warm water and wet Hay all the time you give him this drink, and this will amend the Glanders, and the Mourning in the Chine. *Probatum est.*

*A Medicine for any Cold that is not the Glanders.*

**T**AKE two spoonfuls of Pepper well beaten, two spoonfuls of Mustard, four spoonfuls of Sallet-Oyl, four roasted Onions roasted very soft, and cut them very small; then take two spoonfuls of Elecampane made into fine powder: mingle all these together, and make them into Balls with fresh Butter, and give your Horse three Balls at a time. Nine Balls given at three times will cure him, so you travel him upon it.

*For a Strain in the Shoulder.*

**T**AKE two ounces of Oyl of Pompilion, and two ounces of Oyl of Spike, two ounces of Linseed-oil; rub these Oyls well together upon his shoulder, and warm it in with an hot Iron: then let him be blooded in the shoulder, and hopple his fore-feet together, and this will cure him.

*A Cure for a Sinew-Sprung Horse.*

**T**AKE a pint of Linseed-Oyl, and boyl it; then put in three penny-worth of *Aqua vite*, and stir them together, then anoint your Horses leg with it, and this will cure him.

*The true manner of making those Balls, which cure any violent cold or Glanders, which prevent heavy sickness, which purge away all molten Grease, which recover a loose Stomach, which keep the heart from fainting with exercise, and make a lean Horse fat suddenly.*

**T**AKE of Anni-seeds, of Cummin-seeds, of Fennigreek-seeds, of the fine searfed powder of Elecampane-roots, of each two ounces, beaten, and searfed to a very fine dust; then add to them two ounces of brown Sugar-Candy beaten to powder, and two ounces of the flour of Brimstone; then take an ounce of the best juyce of Liquorish, and dissolve it on the fire in half a pint of White-wine: which done, take an ounce of the best Chymical Oyl of Anni-seeds, and three ounces of the Syrrup of Colts-foot; then of Sallet-Oyl, of fine live Honey, and the purest Syrrup of Sugar or Molosses, of each half a pint; then mix all this with the former powders: and with as much fine Wheat-flour as will bind and knit them all together, work them into a stiff paste, and make thereof Balls somewhat bigger than French Wall-nuts, hulls and all; and so keep them in a close Gally-pot, for they will last all the year: yet I do not mean that you should keep them in the Pot in Balls, for because they cannot lye close, the Air may get in and do hurt, as also the strength of the Oyls will sweat outward, and weaken the substance; therefore knead the whole lump of paste into the Gally-pot, and make the Balls as you have occasion to use them.

Now for the use of these Balls, because they are Cordial, and have divers excellent Vertues, you shall

## 54 Several Excellent Medicines.

understand, that if you use them to prevent sickness, then you shall take one of these Balls and anoint it all over with sweet Butter, and so give it to the Horse in the Morning, in the manner of a Pill; then ride him a little after, if you please, otherwise you may chuse, and feed and water him abroad or at home, according to your usual custome: and this do three or four Mornings.

If you use them to cure either Cold or Glanders, then use them in the same manner for a week together.

If you use them to fatten an Horse, then give them for a Fortnight together.

But if you use them in the nature of scowring, to take away motten grease or foulness, then instantly after his heat and in his heat you must use them.

Again, if you find your Horse at any time hath taken a little cold, as you shall perceive by his inward rattling; if then you take one of these Balls, and dissolve it in half a pint of Sack, and so give it the Horse with a horn, it is a present remedy.

Also to dissolve the Ball in his ordinary water being made Milk-warm, it worketh the like effect, and fatneth exceedingly.

To give one of these Balls before travel, it prevents tiring; to give it in the height of travel, it refresheth weariness; and to give it after travel, it saves an Horse from Surfeits and inward sickness.

*An approved Cure for the Botts, and all manner of Worms, of what nature soever.*

**T**AKE a quart of new Milk, and as much of the purest clarified Honey as will make it extraordinary sweet; then being luke-warm, give it to the Horse

Horse very early in the Morning, he having fasted all the night before; which done, bridle him up, and let him stand tyed to the empty Rack for more than two hours.

Then take half a pint of White-wine, and dissolve into it a good spoonful or more of black Soap, and being well incorporated together (the Horse having stood two hours as aforesaid) give it him to drink, and let him fast other two hours more after it, and the Worms will avoid in great abundance.

*Another most excellent Receipt for the Bots or any Worm, which is the most easie and most certain without sickness.*

**T**AKE the soft downy hairs which grow in the Ears of an Horse, and which you clip away when you poll him, and the little short tuft which grows on the top of his fore-head, underneath his foretop, and a pretty quantity of them, mix them well with a pottle of sweet Oats, and so give them to the Horse to eat, and there is not any thing that will kill Worms more assuredly.

*An uncontrollable way how to know the Age of any Horse.*

**T**HERE are seven outward Characters by which to know the age of any Horse; as namely, his Teeth, his Hoofs, his Tail, his Eyes, his Skin, his Hair, and the Barrs of his Mouth.

*First,*

If you will know his Age by his Teeth, you must understand that a Horse hath in his head just forty Teeth; that is to say, six great wang Teeth above,



and six below on one side, and as many on the other, which makes twenty four, and are called his Grinders. Then six above and six below in the forepart of his Mouth, which are called Gatherers, and make thirty six. Then four Tusshes, one above and one below on one side, and one above and one below on the other side, which is just forty.

Now, the first year he hath his Foals Teeth, which are onely Grinders and Gatherers, but no Tusshes; and they be small, white, and bright to look upon.

The second year he changeth the four foremost Teeth in his Head, and they will appear browner and bigger than the other.

At three years old he changeth the Teeth next unto them, and leaveth no apparent Foals Teeth before, but two of each side above, and two below, which are also bright and small.

At four years old he changeth the Teeth next unto them, and leaveth no more Foals Teeth, but one on each side, both above and below.

At five years old his foremost Teeth will be all changed; but then he hath his Tusshes on each side compleat, and the last Foals Teeth which he cast, those which come in their place will be hollow, and have a little black speck in the midit, which is called the mark in the Horses mouth, and continueth till he be eight years old.

At six years old, he putteth up his new Tusshes, near about which you shall see most apparently growing a little Circle of new and young flesh at the bottom of the Tush; besides, the Tush will be white, small, short and sharp.

At seven years old, all his Teeth will have their perfect growth, and the mark in the Horses mouth before spoken of, will be plainly seen.

At eight years old, all his Teeth will be full, smooth, and plain, the black speck or mark being hardly to be discerned, and his Tusshes will be more yellow than ordinary.

At nine years his foremost Teeth will shew longer, yellower, and fouler, than at younger years, and his Tusshes will be bluntish.

At ten years old, in the inside of his upper Tusshes, will be no holes at all to be felt with your fingers end, which till that age, you shall ever most perfectly feel; besides, the Temples of his head will begin to be crooked and hollow.

At eleven years of age, his Teeth will be exceeding long, very yellow, black, and foul; onely he will cut even, and his Teeth will stand directly opposite one against another.

At twelve years old, his Teeth will be long, yellow, black, and foul, but then his upper Teeth will over-reach and hang over his nether Teeth.

At thirteen years old, his Tusshes will be worn somewhat close to his Chaps, (if he be a much ridden Horse) otherwise they will be black, foul, and long, like the Tusshes of a Bear.

*Second.*

If an Horses Hoofs be rugged, and as it were seamed, one seam over another, and many, if they be dry, foul, and rusty, it is a sign of very old Age; as on the contrary part, a smooth, moist, hollow, and well sounding hoot, is a sign of young years.

*Third.*

If you take your Horse with your Finger and your Thumb,

58 **To know the Age of an Horse.**

Thumb, by the stern of the Tail, close at the setting on by his Buttock, and feeling there hard; if you feel betwixt your Finger and your Thumb of each side his Tail, a joynt stick out more than any other joynt, of the bigness of an Hasel-nut, then you may presume the Horse is under ten years old; but if his joynts be all plain, and no such thing be felt, then he is above ten, and may be fifteen.

*Fourth.*

If an Horles eyes be round, full, and staring from his head; if the pits over his eyes be filled smooth, and even with his Temples, and no wrinkles either about his brow, or under his Eyes, then the Horse is young: If otherwise you see the contrary, it is a sign of old Age.

*Fifth.*

If you take up a Horles skin on any part of his body, betwixt your finger and your thumb, and pluck it from his flesh, then letting it go again, if it suddenly return to the place from whence it came, and be smooth and plain without wrinkle, then the Horse is young and full of strength; but if being pulled up, it stand, and not return to its former place, then he is very old and wasted.

*Sixth.*

If an Horse that is of any dark colour shall grow grissel onely above his Eye-brows, or underneath his main, or any Horse of a whitish colour shall grow meanelled with either black or red meanels universal-

niverſally over his body, then both are inſallible ſigns of extreame old Age.

*Seventhly* If the Bars in his mouth be great, deep, and handle rough and hard, then is the Horſe very old; but if they be ſoft, ſhallow, and handle gently and tenderly, then is the Horſe young, and in luſt.

And thus much of the Age of an Horſe.

*An Excellent Purgation, when any Horſe is ſick of this Greafe, or any Coſtivenesſe.*

**T**Ake a pint of good old White-wine, and ſet it on the fire, then diſſolve into it a lump half as much as an Henſ Egg of Caſtile-Sope; and ſtrain them well together on the fire: then take it off, and put into it two good ſpoonfuls of Hempſeed beaten into fine duſt, and an ounce and an half of the beſt Sugar-Candy beaten to fine powder, and brew all well together. Then having warmed the Horſe, to ſtir up the Greafe and other ſoule humours, give him this to drink, and walk him up and down a little after it, to make the potion work; then ſet him up warm, and after a little ſtirring him up and down in the Stall, if he grow ſickiſh, give Liberty to lye down. After two or three hours faſting, give him a ſweet Maſh. Then feed as at other times.

*For Laxativeness, or extreame Looseness.*

**T**ake a quart of red Wine, and set it on the fire; then put into it an ounce and half of Bolearmony made in fine powder, and two ounces and an half of the Conserves of Sloes; then stir and mix them well together, after take it from the fire, and put to it a spoonful or two of the powder of Cinamon. And brewing all well together, give it the Horse.

Let him fast two hours after it, and let him eat no wast meat.

Hay is wholesome, so is Bread and Oats, if they be well mixt with Beans or Wheat, but not otherwise.

**T**his is an infallible help for the Stone, or pain of Urine, caused by a Sicknes.

**M**ake a strong Decoction (that is to say) boyl your first quantity of Water to an half pint three times over, with keen Onions clean pilled, and Parsley; Then take a quart thereof, and put to it a great spoonful of London-Treacle, and as much of the powder of Eggshels finely sear'd, and give it the Horse to drink: and thus do divers Mornings, if the infirmity be great; otherwise, when you see the Horse offended:

*An approved Medicine to cure and break any old grievous festered and rotten cold, and to dry up a foul Running Glanders.*

**T**Ake a pint of the best Verjuyce, and put to so much strong Mustard made with Wine-vinegar, as will make the Verjuyce strong and keen thereof ; Then take an ounce or more of Roach-Allom, and beat it into fine white Powder ; then when you give this to the Horse, so with a knife or spoon, put some of the Allom into the Horn, and so give it the Horse, part at his mouth, and part at both his nostrils, but especially that nostril which runneth most : Then ride and chafe him a little after it, then set him up warm. At noon, give him a warm Mash, and at all times give him no cold water, but when the Horse may have exercise after it. And thus drench the Horse three days together, and it will be sufficient.

*Another for a violent Cold.*

**T**Ake of Wine-Vinegar half a pint, and as much Sallet-Oyl; brew them well together, and then put to it an ounce and half of Sugar-Candy in fine Powder, and so give it the Horse, and stir him a little after. This is exceeding good, but it will occasion sickness for a small season.

*An excellent Scouring, when other Scourings will not work.*

**T**Ake of sweet Butter a quarter of a pound, half so much Castile-Soap ; beat them well together, then add to them two spoonfuls of Hemp-



## 62      **Several Excellent Medicines.**

Hemp-seed, bruised; of anniseed a spoonful, bruised; of Sugar-Candy an ounce; of Rosin finely bruised half a spoonful: work all these into a paste, and give it the Horse in the manner of Pills, immediately after his heat, or when you have warmed him, and stirred up the grease and foulness within him.

*An admirable Water for any sore Eye, or to clear any dim sight, as the Moon-Eyes, and the like.*

**T**AKE the stone called *Lapis Calaminaris*, and heat it red-hot in the fire; then quench it in half a pint of White-wine, and thus do twelve times together. Then add unto it half so much of the juyce of Houfleeck, and with this, bath the Eye twice or thrice a day, and it is excellent against any imperfection therein.

*Another Water, no less precious for the Eyes than the former.*

**T**AKE a pint of Snow-water, and dissolve it into three or four drams of white Vitriol, and with this water wash the Horses Eyes three or four times, and the effect is great and strange.

*The Master-Medicine of all Medicines for a Back Sinew-strain; or any grief, pain, straightness, shrinking, or numbness of joynts or sinews.*

**T**AKE a fat sucking Mastive whelp, slay it, and bowel it; then stop the body as full as it can hold, with gray Snails, and black Snails; then roast it at a reasonable fire; when it begins to warm, baste it with six ounces of the oyl of spike, made yellow with

## Several Excellent Medicines. 63

with Saffron, and six ounces of the Oyl of Wax; Then save the drippings, and what moisture soever falls from it, whilst any drop will fall from the Whelp, and keep it in a Gally pot.

With this oyntment anoint the strain, and work it in very hot, holding a hot bar of Iron before it; And thus do both Morning and Evening, till the Cure be finished.

*St. Antayne his onely Excellent Medicine, for any strain or swelling.*

**T**AKE Cummin-seeds, and bruise them gross, and boyl it with the oyl of Camomile; then add to it so much yellow Wax as will bring it to the body of a Cerot or Plaister, and spread it on either Cloth or Leather, and very hot apply it to the grief. It is wonderful soveraign for any man also.

*Another for any desperate old Strain, whether it be in the shoulder, Joynts, Hips, or Back-sinews.*

**T**AKE of the best *Aqua vite* a pint, of Oyl de Boy, of Oyl of Swallows, and of black Soap, of each half a pint; work and labour all these together, till they come to a thin oyntment; then take of Camomile, and of red Sage an handful, of Rue, and of Missfeldine an handful; dry them, and bring them to a very fine powder; Then mix them with the former oyntment, and bring all to a gentle Salve.

With some of this Salve, made as hot as the Horse can suffer it, anoint the Strain, and hold an hot bar of Iron before the grieved place, chafing it in with your hand as much as may be: and thus do once

64 **Several Excellent Medicines.**

a day, and in nine dayes the Cure will be effected.

*An Excellent Charge for any New strain, or offence on the Sinews, or any grief proceeding from heat.*

**T**Ake the whites of six Eggs, and beat them well with a pint of white Wine-Vinegar, and an ounce of the oyl of Roses, and as much of the oyl of Mintis; Then take four ounces of Bolearmonie, and as much *Sanguis Draconis*, and with as much fine Bean-flower, or wheat-flower, but Bean-flower is the best; as will thicken it: bring it to a stiff Salve, then spread it about the grieved place, and renew it as it dryeth.

*A perfect Cure for any Sinew-Strain.*

**T**Ake a live Cat, either wild or tame, and cut off her head and tail; then cleave her down the chine, and clap her hot, the bowels and all upon the strain, and remove it not for forty eight hours, and the effect is great.

*Markham's own Balm, which hath never failed him, for any Strain in the Shoulder, or other part, bidden or apparent; Or any Wind-gall, Pain or Swelling whatsoever.*

**T**Ake ten ounces of the best and purest Goose-grease, and melt it on the fire; then take it off, and put it into four ounces of the Oyl of Spike, and an ounce of the Oyl of Origanum: stir them very well together, then put it up into a Gallipot.

With

With this Oynement anoint the grieved part, the Oynement being made exceeding hot; and rub and chafe it in with all painfulness, holding an hot bar of Iron before it: and thus anoint once in two days, but rub and chafe it in twice or thrice a day at the least, and give the Horse moderate Exercise.

This is approved and Infallible.

For swell'd or Goured-Legs, whether it be by reason of the Grease falling into them, or other accident, as Scratches, Pains, Mules, &c.

**I**F your Horses Legs be swell'd onely, because the Grease is fall into them, and that there is no other outward Ulcer, neither will the bathing with cold Water and other outward helps asswage it: Then you shall take a piece of strong coarse woollen Cloth, and thereof make him a Hose a pretty deal larger than his Leg, to reach from the lower part of his Pastern, up to the Cambrel, or to the Knee; and make it close and strait at the Pastern, and wide above. Then take a pottle of Wine-Lees (if you can get them) or else the grounds of Lees of strong Ale or Beer, and set them on the fire, and boyl them well; then put to them a pound of clarified Hogs-grease, and when it is melted and stirred well together, take as much Wheat-Bran as will thicken it, and bring it to the Body of a Pultis: with this Pultis as hot as the Horse can suffer it (onely you must not scald) fill the Hose or Hoses, and then close the Hose at the top.

With this Pultis let the Horse stand two days; then the third day open the Hose at the top, but stir not the Pultis, onely take molten Hogs-grease, hot as the Horse can suffer it, and with a spoon pour it un-

to the Pultis on every side, till it will receive no more; for this will renew the strength of the Pultis. Then close up the top of the Hose, and so let the Horse stand other two dayes, or three. Then you may open the Leg and rub it down, and if you find strong occasion, you may apply another new Pultis; if not, your cure is wrought.

Now if besides the swelling of his Legs, your Horse hath Ulcers, or Chaps, or Scratches, Pains, Mules, or the like:

Then you shall first apply the former Pultis, in all respects as aforesaid; then after five or six days application, when you take the Pultis away, you shall take a quart of old Urine, and put to it half a handful of Salt, as much of Allom, and half an ounce of white Copperas, and boyl it till all be mixt and incorporated together; then with this water very hot, wash the sores once or twice a day, and after a little drying, anoint them with the oyntment called *Ægyptiacum*, and is made of Vinegar eight ounces, of Honey twelve ounces, of Verdigrease two ounces, of Allom one ounce and an half: boyl it to that height, till it come to a red Salve; and it will both kill the malignant humors, and also heal and dry up the sores.

*Another approved Cure for the Scratches, or any Disease of that nature.*

**T**AKE of Hogs-grease eight ounces, of Brimstone, of Lime, of Gunpowder, of each three ounces, of black Soap eight ounces, and of Soot as much as will suffice to bring the rest to a Salve: boyl the Hogs-grease and Soap together, and bring the other hard simples to a fine powder, and

and so mix all together, and make a black Oyntment, with this anoint the sores once a day, after they are cleansed and made raw.

*For any Splint, Spaven, Ringbone, Curb, or any other hard Knot or Excretion.*

**F**irst, having taken view of the Excretion, clip away the hair as far as the Excretion goeth, and a little thought more: then take a piece of Allom'd Leather, made as big just as the place you have bared, and fit it to the same proportion. Then take a little Shoemakers Wax, and spread it round about the very edge or verge of the same, leaving all the inward or middle part empty, and not touched with the Wax, according to this Figure O. Then take of the Herb called Sparagus, which hath the vertue to raise Blisters, and bruising it in a Mortar, lay some thereof on the Leather, in the void and empty place, which ought to contain the just quantity of the Knot or Excretion, and bind it fast thereon; suffering it so to lye (if it be in the Spring or Summer-time, when the Sparagus hath its full strength and virtue) two or three hours. But if it be in the Winter, then it hath less vertue; Then it is not amiss to revive the strength of the Herb, if you add to it a drop or two of Origanum, and let it lye a day; and be sure to tye up the Horses head for two hours, for fear of biting it away.

When you have taken off the Plaister, anoint the place with Train-Oyl warm, and you shall find no Excretion.



*An approved Cure for the Swift Cut, or any bawing on the Legs whatsoever.*

**T**Ake a pint of White-wine, and put to it two or three spoonfuls of Honey, and stir them well together; then boyl them till they be well incorporated together, and brought to the body of an Ointment. Then take it from the fire, and put in as much Turpentine as there was Honey before, and stir all well together. Then strain it with this Salve somewhat hot, bathe the Sores twice a day, and it is a most speedy healer.

*For any Farcy, Mangy, Scab, or Leprosie, whether in the Mane or otherwise.*

**F**irst let Blood, then take a quart of old Urine or Vinegar, and break into it a quarter of a pound or better of the best Tobacco; then set it on the fire of Embers, where it may simmer and not boil, and so let it stew a whole night: then strain it, and with this water wash the infected place, whether it be in the Mane, or any other obscure place, and it is a certain Remedy.

*For any Founder, Frettize, Surbait, or any Imperfection in the Feet.*

**F**irst pare thin, open the heels wide, and take good store of Blood from the toes; then tack on a Shooe somewhat hollow: after, take of the best Frankincense, and rowling it in a little fine Cotton-wool or Bombast, with an hot Iron melt it into the Foot, betwixt the Shooe and the Toe, till the Orifice where

where the Blood was taken be filled up. Then take half a pound of Hogs-grease, and melt it on the fire; then mix it with Wheat-bran, till it be as thick as a Pultis. Then boyling hot as is possible, stop up the Horses foot therewith; then cover it with a piece of an old Shooe, and splint it up, and so let the Horse stand for three or four days; then if occasion serves, you may renew it; otherwise the cure is wrought.

*To make Hoofs grow quickly; and to be tough and strong.*

**T**AKE of the juyce of Garlick seven ounces, of old Hogs-grease two pound, of Asses-dung (for want of it Cows-dung) an handful: mingle them, and boyl them all well together; then with this, both stop the Horses foot, and anoint the Crownets of the Hoofs, and the effect is great.

*A general Salve for any Sore Swelling.*

**T**AKE Turpentine, Black Soap, Hogs-grease, Green treat and Pitch, of each a little quantity; mix and boyl them all well together, and apply it warm to the grief.

*For a Pearl, Pin, and Web, or any Film on an Horses Eye.*

**T**AKE a new-laid Egg, and roast it very hard; then cleave it in sunder long-ways, and take out the yolk; then fill the empty holes with white Vitriol finely beaten, and close the Egg again. Then roast it the second time, till the Vitriol be molten. Lastly, beat the Egg-shell, and all

70 **Several Excellent Medicines.**

in a dish, and strain it, and with the moisture that comes from it, dress the Eye. This is approved.

*For Grease fallen into the Legs, to help them at twice dressing, and to help the Scratches.*

**T**Ake of Train-Oyl, of Nerve-Oyl, of Oyl de Bay, of each half a pint, and the bigness of an Egg in Allom; boyl them all well together; then having cleansed the Sores, and opened the Pulvis, if there be any, with this Salve anoint the Griets, and it is a speedy Cure.

*For the Glanders, an approved Cure.*

**T**Ake a quarter of a pint of Verjuyce, three spoonfuls of Sallet-Oyl, and two spoonfuls of *Aqua vite*; put one half into one Nostril, the other into the other Nostril, being blood-warm; then ride the Horse somewhat speedily for twenty or forty score, and onely spare him when he coughs; then set him up warm; and at noon give him a warm Malt. Lastly, if you find him to grow sick, give him warm Milk from the Cow.

*To stay the Glanders for a time, till you may make sale of your Horse.*

**T**Ake a pound of Elder-bark, being the green and not the gray, beat it in a Mortar and strain it; then put that juyce to a quart of Ale, and so give it to the Horse: do this for three Mornings together.

*An approved Cure for the Pains, Mules, Rats-tails, and the like.*

**T**Ake green Vitriol half a pound, and boyl it in a pottle of running Water, with Allom, Mustard, Sage, and Hyfop, of each an handful. Now the night before you apply this, anoint all the Sores with strong Mustard, after they are made raw; then the next day wash them with the water before shewed, and the Cure is certain.

*To help an Horse that galls between the Legs, either through heat or evil dressing.*

**T**Ake a raw Egg, and crush it between the Horses Legs, and rub the gall well therewith, after the Sores are made dry.

*For Enterfering, to help it or hide it, for a small time.*

**F**asten a new Cord to his Dock, and having made divers hard knots thereon, draw it between his Legs, and fasten it to his Girths; or otherwise, rub great store of Starch between his Thighs.

*The best Receipt that can be for brittle hoofs.*

**T**Ake Dogs-grease a pound, and clarifie it up with Rosemary; then mixing it with half so much Cow-dung, boyl it, and hot or cold, stop the Horses foot therewith.

*To cure the Scratches.*

**T**AKE a penny-worth of Verdigrise, a penny-worth of red Lead, the like quantity of Soap; mix these together, and apply it plaister-wise, letting it lye three days and three nights. You must cut the Hair close.

*For the Farcy.*

**T**AKE about one handful of Rue, and about ten Cloves of Garlick, and pound them together; then take one penny-worth of *Aqua vite*, and strain them through a Cloth; then take a little black Wool to drink up that moisture, and put into each Ear half the Wool; then sew up the Ears together; then cut the forehead of the Horse, and put into the hole the inner rind of an Elder, about an inch long, or something more; keep him from wet falling in to his Ears the first day and night.

*Approved by Mr. Holled.*

*For to cure the Cankers in a Horses Mouth.*

**T**AKE half a pint of the best White-wine-vinegar, and half a pound of the best Roch-Allom, and an handful of red Sage, and boyl them all together, and so wash the Horses mouth and tongue.

*Approved, W. B.*

*For to cure the Scratches.*

**T**AKE Soap and Salt, and mix them together in your hand, and keep his Feet dry, and tie a linnen cloth about them, and it will cure them.

*Approved at Stanton.*

*For*

*For a Horse that hath a Cold.*

**T**AKE new Butter unwashed, and without Salt, and mix with it brown Sugar-Candy, Anni-seeds, and Liguorish; but if the Horse rattle in his head, put in two Cloves of Garlick made in Balls; do this three Mornings together. *Approved, W. B.*

*For a Beast that staletb Blood.*

**T**AKE one quart of strong Ale, and a red Herring cut into small pieces, and let it lye a sleeping in the Ale; then give the Beast it with a Horn, and it will stay the in-bleeding of the Beast. *Robinson.*

*For the Botts.*

**T**AKE Salt and Water, and give it the Horse in a Horn. *Approved, Tho. Emson.*

*For a Horse that hath got an over-reach, or a Tread of the Heel.*

**F**IRST search it well to the bottom, and take out all the Gravel, and wash it with Stale; then take a good handful of Nettles, and a good handful of Salt, put them in a cloth, and bind them to the sore; do this two or three Mornings together, then set the Shooe on with a leather under it; then pour in some Hogs-grease scalding hot, after that pour in Robin scalding hot, presently after which put in some Wheat-bran. *Approved, Pepper.*

*For a Horse that hath gotten a stroke or a Dist of the Eye.*

**T**AKE a little Honey with a little grated Ginger; mix them together, and put it into the Horses Eye with a Feather: do this three Mornings together. *Approved by me W. B.*

*For*



*For the Scratches.*

**T**Ake Verdigrease and burnt Allom, mix them together, and so apply it, keeping the Horse dry.  
*Approved, W. B.*

*For the swelling of a Horses back.*

**T**Ake Flax or Flax Teare, with the whites of Eggs and Wheat-flour, beat them all together, it will take the swelling down.  
*Approved, Tho. Emson.*

*For a Strain.*

**H**Ogs-grease is very good for a Sinew-strain, or any other part of the Horse.  
*Approved by me W. B.*

*For a Horse that is Mangie.*

**T**Ake a gallon of strong Ale, and a pound of Tobacco-stalks, half a pound of Allom, a pint of Salt, one penny-worth of Mercury; boyl these all together until they be half boyled away: the day before, let the Horse Blood, and Curry him with a Comb; when the Horse is dress'd, wash the Manger with scalding water, and smoke the Saddle with Allom or Brimstone, burnt Hay or Straw.

*Approved, Mr. Willes*

*For*

*For the Spleen.*

**M**Ake a Plaister of Oxycroceum, and spread it upon Sheeps-leather; lay it to the pain, and let it lye till it come off of it self. *Mr. Holden.*

*A Glister to expel Wind.*

**T**AKE Fennel-seeds and Anni-seeds, two spoonfuls of each, and bruise them; a little Camomile-flowers, Rosemary-flowers, Pellitory of the Wall, Penny-royal and Camomile, of each of these half a handful. *Mr. Holden.*

*A Glister for the Wind-Colick.*

**T**AKE a quart of thin Posset-drink, Penny-royal, Pellitory of the Wall, of each an handful; Mal-lows and Plaintain, of each half an handful; and Cummin-seeds and Saxafrage-seeds, of each one spoonful bruised; Camomile-flowers one spoonful; boil them down to half the Posset-ale, take half a pint thereof, dissolve therein half an ounce of the Electuary called *Electuarium de Baccis Lauri.* *Medcalf.*

*For the Wind-Colick.*

**B**Oyl one spoonful of Cummin-seeds with a few Camomile-flowers, in Posset-drink, good to drink for the wind, for one that is costive in his Body. *Medcalf.*

*How*

*How to order, feed, and keep any Horse for Pleasure, Hunting, or Travel.*

**I** Would have your Keeper of these ordinary Horses to rise early in the Morning, by the Spring of day, or before, according to the season of the year, and to fitt the Horse the quantity of near three Pints of good old dry Oats, and to put to them an handful or two of spelted Beans, Halls and all, and so give them to the Horse.

After he hath eaten them, let him dress him according to the order of good Horsemanship.

That is, First, curry with the Comb, then dust, then curry with the Brush, then dust, then rub with wet Hands, after with a clean Woollen Cloth, after with a clean Linnen Cloth, then pick all obscure places; Lastly, comb down the Main and Tail. Then saddle him, and ride him forth to water, then warm him both before and after very moderately, so bring him home dry without sweat.

Then cloath him up after you have rubbed his Head, Body, and Legs, and let him stand on his Bridle more than an hour, then give him the former quantity of Provender, and the same in kind.

After he hath eaten his Provender, give him into his Rack a pretty bundle of Hay, and so let him rest till after dinner.

When you have dined, give him the former quantity of Provender, and the same in kind, and so let him rest till the Evening; only renew his Hay, if there be occasion.

At Evening dress him well, as in the Morning; then ride him forth to water, and do as you did in the Morning.

When

When you come home, and have clothed him up, let him stand on his Bridle, as before; then give him the former quantity of Provender, and so let him rest till nine of the Clock at night; at which time give him the former quantity of Provender, and a pretty bundle of Hay, and so let him rest till the Morning.

This you shall do concerning his Ordinary keeping at home, where the Horse hath rest, and that you may dispose of hours as you please; but if you be either in Travel, or Sport, or other occasion, so that you cannot observe these particular times, then you must divide the main and whole quantity of meat, into fewer parts and greater quantities, and give them at the best conveniency; ever observing to give the least quantity before Travel, as a 3 part before Mounture, and the two other after you come to rest.

Nor would I have you to distract your mind with any doubt or amazement, because I prescribe you five several times of feeding in one day, as if it should either over-charge you, or over-feed your Horse; Questionless there is no such matter, when you look into the true proportion; for it cannot be denied, but whosoever is worthy of a good Horse, or good means to keep a good Horse, cannot allow him less than one Peck a day: nay, the *Carrier, Carter, Poulter* and *Packhorse* will allow half a peck at a Watering, and this allowance which I set down comes to no more; for 15 pints of Oats, and one pint of Spelt-beans up heaped, make two Gallons, and that is one Peck of *Winchester* measure. Now to give it at twice, fills the stomach more, makes the digestion worse, and the appetite weak; whereas to give less, but more often, the stomach is ever craving, the digestion always ready, and the appetite never wanting:  
so

so that health ( without disorder ) can never be a stranger.

Therefore once again, thus much for ordinary keeping.

But if you intend to give an Heat, as to Hunt, Gallop, Travel, or the like, which I would wish you do once, twice, or thrice a week ; Then observe all your former observations ; only the night before, give him little or no Hay at all.

In the Morning early before his heat, and before his dressing, give him three or four handfuls of clean sifted Oats, walht either in strong Ale or Beer ; Then dress him, Saddle him, and give him his heat.

But if it be sudden and violent, then let it be when the Horse hath emptied himself very well.

After his heat rub him very well, and bring him dry into the Stable.

Then after he is clothed up warm, let him stand on his Bridle at least two hours ; then give him a little bundle of Hay to tear out upon his Bridle, and an hour after feed him as hath been before shewed : Onely with the first Oats give him an handful or better of Hempseed, well dusted and mixed.

At night warm him a little water, and give him it luke-warm ; then an hour after give him his Proven-der, and a pretty bundle of Hay, and so let him rest till the next Morning.

The next Morning do all things as in his ordinary keeping.

Let him stand on Litter both night and day ; yet change it often, and keep the Planches clean.

If you intend to travel or Journey in the Morning, then give no Hay, or but little the Night before ; if you Journey in the afternoon, then give no Hay, or but little in the Morning.

## for Pleasure, Hunting, or Travel. 79

In Journeying ride moderately the first hour or two ; but after, according to your occasions. Water before you come to your Inn, if possible ; but if you cannot, then give warm water in the Inn after the Horse is fully cooled.

Trotters-oyl is an excellent Oyntment, being applied very warm, and well chafed in, to keep your Horses limbs and sinews nimble, and to help stiffness and lameness.

Neither wash your Horse nor walk him ; for the first endangereth foundring in the Body or feet, and breedeth all surfeits ; the latter is the ground of all strong colds, which turn to Glanders and Rottenness : but if necessity compel you to either, as foul ways and long stays. then rather wash your Horses legs with pails of water at your Stable-door, than to endanger him in any Pond or River.

And for walking, rather sit on your Horses Back to keep his spirits stirring, than to lead him in hand, and with dull spirits to receive all manner of mischief.

This I think sufficient for clean and ordinary keeping.

---

### *An Order how to breed Horses.*

#### *The choice of your Stallion and stud Mares.*

**F**irst and principally you must foresee, that your Stallion and stud Mares be both of good and lively nature, and not subject to any natural diseases. For as heavy Horses and Mares will breed Colts of roilish and heavy nature, so if they be infected with any



any natural disease, their Colts for the most part shall be troubled with the same disease.

*Wild Mares be not best to keep for the Race.*

**I**T shall be well done that you handle all your stud Mares, and make them tame and easie, whereby, besides the commodity you may have of their work, which cannot hurt their taming if they be soberly handled, you may be sure at all times to remove them from one Pasture to another, to bring them to be covered, and to take their Colts from them without great trouble; whereas wild Mares be not only cumbersome to keep, but also oftentimes do destroy the Colts in their bellies with their rashness, when you should handle them or any of their fellows.

*At what Age your Mare is first to be handled and covered.*

**T**He best Age to take up your Mare to make her tame, and to break her, is when she shall be two years old and the vantage; and so you may the year following, when she shall be fully three years old and upward, put her to your Horse to be covered, which in my opinion is the best Age to put her first to the Horse, although some Writers be of opinion, that it is best that she be first covered at two years old.

*How to inforce your Mares to come to be strained.*

**Y**OU may most conveniently bring her to be covered of your Stallion, if four or five days before you will bring her to your great Horse, you cause  
to

to be put to her in some close Pasture, kept and fenced for that purpose, some small stoned Nag to wooe her, that she may abide your great Horse, foreseeing that he be in no wise unfettered longer than some diligent man doth look on; for if the Nag be at liberty at any time after she is disposed to take the Horse, she will be sure to be covered of him, though he be lower than she by a cubit.

*The Order of Covering.*

**W**Hen you do perceive that your Mare will abide the Nag, and doth shew other tokens that she is desirous to be covered, you must cause your great Horse that shall cover her to be provendred, and not to drink much the night before he shall cover her. Then in the Morning following, at the Sun rising, you may bring him to your Mare, or her to him, in some such place as neither of them can leap out of, where when he hath covered her twice or thrice, let her remain feeding on Grass, with her Colt kept by her without water; but let your Horse be taken up, well rubbed and well provendred to the next Evening. And then put him to your Mare again where you left her, and let him cover her as often as he will that night, except you see your Horse chafe so much that he will marr himself.

*How to use your Mare which is covered.*

**A**nd so must you of force be driven to take him from her the second time, till the Morning following, at which time (except your Mare be satisfied with that which was done before) you must put to your Horse the third time; and when he hath covered

vered her as often as he will; between four of the clock in the Morning, and eight of the clock before noon, take up your Horse, and let your Mare be led into some water to the mid-side at least, where she may drink water; but not too much; and then let her be led and turned to the whole stud, where no other Horses must come for a whole Month at the least to beat her.

*How to make that no Mare shall go barren.*

**A**ND when you have thus severally caused to be covered all your Mares, you must about *Lammas*, in the Month of *July*, or beginning of *August*, get a Mare or two which have not been covered that Year before, and enforcing them to be horsed by such means as before appointed, when they shall be ready to be covered, you must turn them with some other Stallion, whom you esteem not as your best Horse, among your stud of Mares; and so he covering that Mare or Mares you turned in with him unto the stud, shall cause the rest (if any of them have not conceived at their first covering) to come to that Horse again; whereby you shall be sure to keep no Mare barren all the year, but to have of every Mare a Colt, though not by your best Horse. You may suffer that Horse to run amongst your Mares three Weeks or a Month. But if you turn him into your stud, putting no Mare in with him ready to be covered, he will at his first entry beat all your Mares, and so happily hurt all your Mares which had conceived before, and so do more hurt than good.

*What*

*What time of the Year is best for your Mares to be covered.*

**T**He best time of the year to have your Mare covered, is from the end of *May* to the end of *July*, and then shall your Mare, which always goes with Foal one year lacking a month, Foal in such time of the year as she shall find plenty of grafs to nourish her self and her Colt withal : whereas if you suffer her to be covered in *February*, *March*, or *April*, she will Foal so rath in the year, that oftentimes being bare, and not covered of the winter past, she doth hunger both her self, and marre her Colt, for lack of feeding.

*To Diet your Stallion for the time he shall cover.*

**H**ere is to be noted, that although your Stallion standing at hard meat will not miss to get a Colt on your Mare going to Grafs, (if she be ordered and inforced as before) yet the best diet for him for the whole time he shall cover, is to feed on Grafs: when he hath tasted of the grafs with them, he will like his Hay the worse; and also there is more danger in breaking of his wind in feeding on Hay than grafs.

*How your breeding Mare is to be used when she shall foal.*

**Y**our breeding Mare that hath a Colt in her belly, must fourteen or fifteen days before she Foal be taken from the stud, and with some other gentle Mare or Gelding be put in some other rank Pasture well fenced for that purpose; which will not onely

make her lusty, and soon ready to be covered, and able to Foal without danger, but also give plenty of milk to her Colt when he is first foaled.

*How many years a Horse will serve to cover your Mares.*

**Y**OUR Stallion used as is before, will serve for six or seven years, to cover every year seven or eight Mares, and do you service the rest of the year besides ; whereas turned abroad to your Mares, he can do you no other service, neither will he last above three years.

*The best age for Horse or Mare to get or bear Colts, and how many years they will continue good.*

**T**HE best age for Horse or Mare to get or bear Colts, is for the Mare, from three years old till ten. And for the Horse, from four or five years till twelve ; and after that age the Colts of them wax heavy, weak and slothful.

*What time of the year is best to wean the Colts from their Dams.*

**T**HE best time of the year to wean your Colts is at Candlemas, or Shrove-tide, after the time as your Colt is Foaled ; wherein you must use much diligence : for if your Colt be not well weaned, well Summered, and well Wintered, the three first years, and namely the first year when he moaneth for his Dam, he shall seldom or never come to be a good Horse. And therefore when you wean your Colts, you must bring them to some house ordained for the same purpose, clean out of the hearing of their Dams ;  
wherein

wherein they must be pinned, and not to come abroad the first fourteen days, out of the hearing of their Dams : whereunto you must have pasture adjoyning, wherein they may play, and feed every fair day after the fourteen days past, from the time you begin to wean them, till grasse be fully sprung in *May* ; and put them into some such pasture, as commonly your Milch-kine be fed in, where they may neither, feeding in high and rank grasse, hurt their Reins, or grow thick necked, nor for lack of feeding hinder their growth, but feeding in a short sweet grasse, may prove well till they have forgotten their Dams.

*What feeding is best for Colts, from two years old upward.*

**T**HIS is a general ground, that wet lying and lack of feeding in the winter, and old rank feeding in summer, from two years old forwards, doth marr the most part of our whole breed in *England* ; which in my opinion, well ordered, would breed the best Horses for all kind of service, of the whole Earth ; for as wet lying and lack of good feeding in the winter, doth breed a heartless ill shapen Horse, subject to all cold and watry diseases both in his Body and limbs; so over-rank feeding in the Summer, chiefly from two years old upward, doth breed an evil reined, and a slothful Horse, ever ready (being over-laden with fat flesh) to be more foundered, and to catch the Glanders and Cough upon every Cold. And therefore your best feeding of your Horse-Colts from two years old upward for the Summer-feeding, is, where he may have a large walk, and hungry short feeding, and not yet so bare, but that he may (travelling for it) feed himself full once in a day, and that



he hinder not himself of his growing: but in any wise keep your Horse-Colts from knowing any Mare till they be five years old.

*Why English Horses being taken up so young, are not good*

**T**He cause why our *English* Horses be taken up so young, as I have heard sundry of our chief Horse-masters say, is, for that our Horses being great and well fed, if they should run till they should come to their full strength, would be so sturdy and mischievous to break, that they would rather mischieve themselves and their Breaker, than be made tame; which in my fancy is but a vain opinion. For there was never so sturdy nor so wilful a Horse, which would not be tame and easie to handle, with watching and hunger, within one month at the farthest, if his Keeper will use diligence.

*The way to handle a sturdy Horse.*

**A**Nd that may most conveniently be brought to pass, if at the first coming into the house, before he will suffer his Keeper to handle him and to take up his feet, he do put no meat before him, but let him take all his feeding at his Keepers hands, and so shall you make him gentle and tame without stripes or striving; and the order before appointed in his breaking, being the Colt of a tame Mare, and fed some part of every Winter at hand in the house, will acquaint him with the man, and make him almost tame before he be taken up: which Colt shall seldom prove a fearful or a blenching Horse.

*The*

*The using of Horses after they be handled.*

**A**Nd for Conclusion, whosoever doth use to keep his Horses Bridle after riding till he be in good temper, and almost cold, and doth not give him water nor meat being hot, neither doth ride him fast upon a full stomach; shall seldom or never have his Horse lame or sick, if he breed him as is aforesaid, before he take him up.

*What feeding is best in Winter for Mares Weanlings, of two years old.*

**A**Nd for the winter-feeding you must use one order for your Mares and Weanlings two years old in several places, which is a hovel or house made for them adjoyning to your Winter-Pasture, wherein you must sometime in the evil weather, in a rack made for that purpose, give them some fodder, and be sure that they be brought into that house every night that is like to prove wet, but in the frosty days and nights it is best to pin them a broad.

You must in any wise keep one pasture nigh to the house that you feed your Mare-Colts in the winter-time, wick pasture may not be fed in before *Shrove-tide*, because that time and the middle of *May* (before which, grasse is not sufficiently sprung in most places for Horses to feed on) is the most time of danger to hunger-bane of all the year: in which time, if your Colts growing all the Summer following, will make your Colt-Mares so bare, that they shall not be able to foal, nor give their Colts sufficient suck.

*At what age Colts may best be handled.*

**W**Hen your Horse-Colt hath been bred as is afore appointed, the best age in my opinion to take him up to break, is when he shall be full four years old and the vantage ; or if you may spare him, and have good close ground to keep him in, rather at five years old and the vantage, for then will his joynts and sinews be strong and well knit, his hoofs ever tough, and not brittle, his eye-sight good, his chine strong, so that you cannot hurt him, neither in breaking nor in reasonable riding ; besides, he will last a good Horse till he be 24 or 25 years old : whereas if you will take him up at two or three years old, as we commonly do, you shall find him afterwards many times blind, brittle hoofed, weak back'd, full of windgalls and splints, and shew himself to be an old stiff Horse, before he come to be ten years old, as the most part of their *Spanish* Horses do, because they are taken up so young ; which is, because that in *Spain* they have no good close ground to let their Colts run longer in, and not for any other Commodity.

---

Approved

---

Approved Receipts  
For the Curing of all Diseases  
Incident to  
**HORSES.**

---

*Receipt I. To draw out any Thorn or Nail in any place,*

**T**Ake Dodmonds, which are House-snails, and seeth them in Butter and apply them, and they will draw out any Thorn or Nail. And so will the Roots of Reeds, if they be bruised and laid to, being bound to the wounded place with a linnen cloth: He may run out, but to stand in is better.

*Proved.*

*II. A perfect Drier of a Green Wound, or any other Sore.*

**T**Ake Soap and unslaked Lime, and mix them well together; but before you lay it to, wash the wound or sore with a little White-wine-Vinegar, and then apply it.

*Proved.*

A marrow-bone burnt and made into Powder and strewed on a sore or wound, is a great Drier.

III.

III. *For any Anbury.*

**T**AKE a hot Iron and make it very sharp; and take the Anbury in your hand, and sear it off to the bottom with a red-hot Iron: Then mix a little beaten Verdigrease and Train-Oyl together; heat them, anoint the place once a day till it be whole.

*Proved.*

IV. *For the Flapps in any Horses mouth.*

**T**O know this, you shall perceive his Lips to be swell'd on both sides of his mouth, and that which is in the blisters is like the white of an Egg; you must cut some slashes in it with a knife, then rub it once with Salt, and it is cured.

*Proved.*

V. *To rot a Sore or Swelling.*

**A**Noint the Sore or Swelling with cold Bacon-grease once in two days, till it be soft; then open the skin with a Pen-knife at the bottom of the Sore, and let out the filth; and so heal it up with your healing Salve.

*Proved.*

*See the water and Green Oyntment.*

VI. *Directions how to lay a Wound open, and where; and how to miss the Veins under it, be it in Body or Legs.*

**W**Hen you cut a Sore open, lay it draining at the bottom, or a little lower: be sure always to do this. To miss the Master-Vein, if it lye lengthwise in the body, be sure to cut under the Vein:

If

If it be a Sore upon the Leg, that lies right over the Vein, then cut it side-ways of the Vein right up and down. If a Sore happen to be hollow a great length, be it in body or legs, then cut a hole at the lowest place, that the filth may drain from the Sore the better; then put in your finger under the Vein; and when your finger is past the Vein upwards as far as it will go, cut at your fingers end another hole; and if you see occasion, turn your finger to another place, and at your fingers end cut another hole. If you chance at any time to cut a Vein in pieces, put in a piece of a Hares skin with the wool on, or Cony-wool; but Hares is the best, and this will stop the bleeding.

*Proved.*

*That Hares-wool will stop bleeding sooner than most things: See Receipt, to stop bleeding in Veins that be cut.*

VII. *The way to put in a French Rowel.*

**T**HAT is, upon the lowest part of the Horses breast to that side that is lame; you shall with a sharp knife cut the skin through, not crosse the breast, but right down, half the length of your Finger; then put your Finger between the skin and the flesh, and raise the skin from the flesh round about the hole the breadth of a six-pence; then take a piece of the upper leather of a shooe, and cut it in the manner of this Figure here prescribed; cut the piece of leather round, and then cut out a hole round, as you see by the Figure; then put a Needle and a thread through it, as you may perceive by the two pricks in the top and bottom of the hole; then take a Tobacco-pipe or a quill, and cut it so that the wind may go through it; and put one





III. *For any Anbury.*

**T**AKE a hot Iron and make it very sharp; and take the Anbury in your hand, and sear it off to the bottom with a red-hot Iron: Then mix a little beaten Verdigrease and Train-Oyl together; heat them, anoint the place once a day till it be whole.

*Proved.*

IV. *For the Flapps in any Horses mouth.*

**T**O know this, you shall perceive his Lips to be swell'd on both sides of his mouth, and that which is in the blisters is like the white of an Egg; you must cut some slashes in it with a knife, then rub it once with Salt, and it is cured.

*Proved.*

V. *To rot a Sore or Swelling.*

**A**Noint the Sore or Swelling with cold Bacon-grease once in two days, till it be soft; then open the skin with a Pen-knife at the bottom of the Sore, and let out the filth; and so heal it up with your healing Salve.

*Proved.*

*See the water and Green Oyntment.*

VI. *Directions how to lay a Wound open, and where; and how to miss the Veins under it, be it in Body or Legs.*

**W**Hen you cut a Sore open, lay it draining at the bottom, or a little lower: be sure always to do this. To miss the Master-Vein, if it lye lengthwise in the body, be sure to cut under the Vein:

If

If it be a Sore upon the Leg, that lies right over the Vein, then cut it side-ways of the Vein right up and down. If a Sore happen to be hollow a great length, be it in body or legs, then cut a hole at the lowest place, that the filth may drain from the Sore the better; then put in your finger under the Vein; and when your finger is past the Vein upwards as far as it will go, cut at your fingers end another hole; and if you see occasion, turn your finger to another place, and at your fingers end cut another hole. If you chance at any time to cut a Vein in pieces, put in a piece of a Hares skin with the wool on, or Cony-wool; but Hares is the best, and this will stop the bleeding.

*Proved.*


*That Hares-wool will stop bleeding sooner than most things: See Receipt, to stop bleeding in Veins that be cut.*

VII. *The way to put in a French Rowel.*

**T**HAT is, upon the lowest part of the Horses breast to that side that is lame; you shall with a sharp knife cut the skin through, not cross the breast, but right down, half the length of your Finger; then put your Finger between the skin and the flesh, and raise the skin from the flesh round about the hole the breadth of a six-pence; then take a piece of the upper leather of a shooe, and cut it in the manner of this Figure here prescribed; cut the piece of leather round, and then cut out a hole round, as you see by the Figure; then put a Needle and a thread through it, as you may perceive by the two pricks in the top and bottom of the hole; then take a Tobacco-pipe or a quill, and cut it so that the wind may go through it; and put one



one end into the hole of his breast upwards, and blow in the wind, and beat the wind upwards to the top and all over his shoulder : when you have blown it two or three times, run the Needle and thread once through the Rowel and once through the skin, and draw the Rowel into the cut : When you have thus placed the Rowel in the cut, with the hole of the Rowel right against the hole that you have cut in the breast, so that it may not move ; then with your

 Needle and thread run a stitch or two overthwart the cut to keep in the Rowel, as you are directed in the Margin : when you have done thus, anoint it with a piece of Butter, and let the Rowel stand a week in the hole, and then cut the thread and take it out. This is the best Rowel that is.

*Proved.*

*Your breath must not smell of Tobacco when you blow the skin up (for a sweet breath is best ; ) if it do, the place will swell the more.*

VIII. *A rare Green Oyntment to heal any Wound, old or new, quickly.*

**T**AKE a handful of water-Betony, as much of Comfrey, of Mugwort, red Sage, Sage of Betlehem, by some called Jerusalem-Sage, of Southernwood, of Rue, by some called Herb of grace, of Rosemary, of each of these an handful ; boyl all these in a pint of May-Butter, and as much Mutton-Suet ; and when it hath boyl'd a while, take it off the fire and strain it through a cloth, and put it into a pot for your use. This Oyntment will last good a year.

*Proved.*

*Before you lay this Oyntment to, wash the Wound first with the water which you have in Receipt 38.*

IX.

IX. *To take a Film off an Horſes Eye.*

**Y**OU muſt take as much of Dialthæa as the bigness of a Walnut, and put to it the Powder of Verdigrease as much as an Haſel-nut : mix them well together, then every day put into his Eye as much of it as the bigness of a Pease : This will take off any Film whatsoever. *Proved.*

X. *A Medicine to defend and keep back humours from a Wound, ſo that it may heal the ſooner.*

**T**AKE two pints of Tartar, or the dregs of White-wine-Vinegar, but the Tartar is better ; and put in as much Bolearmoniack as the bigness of an Egg ; an handful of white or bay Salt, and an handful of great Burdock-leaves, or the Roots : wash the swell'd place, and round about the swelling with this once a day ; this will hasten the cure very much, if you do so wash it with this, and apply to the wound your healing Salves or Oyntment, as you may in this Book be furnished with more of them for that purpose. *Proved.*

XI. *Another for the ſame.*

**T**AKE a pint of Verjuyce, and put to it three pennyworth of Camphire cut very small, boyl them together a quarter of an hour, and when it is almost cold, put it into some Glas or pot, and wash the swell'd place round about it once a day with this, till it be healed with other Medicines.

This will much further the Cure of any wound or Sore, where humours do fall down to it, whilst you do

do apply other Medicines to heal up the fore or wound : For these defensives are for no other purpose, but to keep back humours that hinder Sores or Wounds from healing. *Proved.*

**XII. *A rare Receipt for a Farcion.***

**T**AKE Mullin, by some called Higtaper; it hath a great woolly leaf; it groweth close by the ground upon the banks of ditches, or in the high-ways-side; Chickweed, Groundsel, and Wood-Betony, of each an handful : cut them small, and boyl them all in a quart of Ale, and when it is luke-warm put in two penny-worth of Quick-silver, and give it him to drink fasting : The third day after, give him the like proportion, warm water all the while to drink, and to stand in. *Proved.*

**XIII. *For a Horse that hath his Fundament fallen out; or for a Cow that hath the Mother fallen out.***

**T**AKE an armful of Willow-boughs, and dry them on a hot Hearth ; when they are dry, sweep the Hearth as clean as you can, and set them on fire and burn them to ashes ; then take the ashes and searce them through a fine boulder, and before you strew on the Powder of the ashes, wash the Fundament with warm water, to make it as warm as the Body ; then strew on the finest of the ashes, and put the Fundament up into its place ; then tye a line to the Horses tail, and bring it between his hinder-legs, and fasten it to a Suringle under his belly pretty strait : using this means, his Fundament will be kept up, and in a very short time it will be knit firm and strong again. If the Mother of a Cow come forth, use but the afore-

aforeſaid means, and you will find it a perfect remedie.  
*Both proved.*

White Pepper beaten finely and ſearced through a fine ſearce, the Fundament being well warmed with warm water or Milk, and after warmed with a warm cloth, and then this beaten Pepper ſtrewed upon it, and ſo put up, and his tayl tyed cloſe between his Legs, as before, you will find it very good.

A Marrow-bone of a Bullock burnt in the fire, and beaten to fine powder, is, for a Wound, a great and good dryer and healer, and will ſkin a Wound.

*Proved.*

The inward and outward bark of a Willow-tree, firſt dried, and afterwards the hearth being ſwept very clean, burnt to aſhes, and the aſhes ſifted through a fine boulder: the fineſt of theſe aſhes is good to dry up any Sore, nothing like it. Theſe aſhes are likewiſe a great binder for a looſeneſs in Horſes or Cows Bodies.

*Proved.*

XIV. *To kill Lice of Horſes and Cows.*

**T**AKE a quantity of Hogs-greaſe, and anoint the Horſe underneath the Mane, and upon the ridgebone of the Back; it will burſt them all preſently.

XV. *For a ſtub or other hurt in or about the Foot.*

**T**AKE Bees-wax, Pitch, Hogs-greaſe, and Turpentine; boyl them together in an earthen pan, but put in the Turpentine a little before you take it off the fire, and ſtir it well together; make the wound clean, and pour it in ſcalding hot; dip hards or tow in it, and ſtuff the place where it is hurt full with it,  
and



and it will heal it in a short time. This will last a year. *Proved.*

XVI. *To Cleanse any Wound old or new.*

**T**ake the Roots of Elder and beat them to powder, and boyl them with *Engliff* Honey : It is good to cleanse any Sore old or new. But take this for a general observation, that before you dress any Wound, let it be where it will about the Horse, wash it clean first with White-wine-vinegar, and then dress it with your Salve. *Approved.*

XVII. *For the Sleeping Evil.*

**T**He signs to know it are: the Horse will stand sleeping in a corner continually, with his head hanging down to the ground ; it takes away his memory. The Cure is to be performed thus : Let him Bloud on both sides the neck in the morning fasting before he drink ; let him Bloud also in the Mouth, in the third furrow in the roof of his mouth; and after he hath bled well, give him this drink : Take of Camomil and Mother-wort together three handfulls cut small, and boyl them in two quarts of Running water half an hour , and then give the Horse a pint once in two days fasting ; the third day give him the rest fasting, and three or four hours after give him warm water , and a little comfortable Mash made of ground Mault put into scalding hot water after it comes off the fire : keep him in the house warm the time of the cure, and fume his head as you do for the Staggers, and this in a short time is a perfect cure. *Proved.*

XVIII. *To stop bleeding at the Nose.*

**T**He chief cause thereof is the thinness of the Vein in the head; you must let him Blood in both the Plate-veins, and then wind a thum-band of wet Hay about his neck, and throw cold water upon the thum-band till you see the Blood to stanch; the thum-band must be so long, that it may be wound from his ears to his breast very lightly.

XIX. *For the Falling Evil in an Horse.*

**T**He falling evil will cause him suddenly to fall down, and to lye sprauling with his heels, and foaming at the mouth, like a man that hath the Falling-sickness; you shall know whether he be subject to fall often, by feeling him by the gristles of his Nose, which will be cold if he be subject to it. The Cure is, to let him Blood on both sides of his neck; after he hath bled, in the morning before he drink, give him this drink: Take Miseltoe that groweth upon an Apple-tree, the leaves are like Ivy-leaves; dry it and rub it to powder, and use it at your leisure: give him of this powder of Miseltoe one spoonful in half a pint of Sack, and keep him in the house till he be well, and give him to drink water luke-warm.

*Approved*

*You may add to the Miselto three drams of the Electuary, called Theriaca Diatesfaron, or the Oyl of Pepper, one dram, or a dram and an half.*

XX. *For a Cough old or new, or the heaving of his Lungs.*

**T**AKE the Root of *Gentian*, which you shall have at the Apothecaries; slice it, dry it, and beat it to powder, give the beast as much of this powder as will lye upon a shilling in half a pint of his own water; give this to him fasting once in three days, and so continue every third day, till you see his Cough and Heaving to abate or be quite gone: the cold of his water must be just taken off, and he must stand in all the time of the Cure. This for an old Cough or heaving of the Lungs, is the best Cure in the world.

*Proved.*

XXI. *For a Canker in the Tongue.*

**Y**OU shall see his Mouth and Tongue raw within; you shall know it by his stinking breath and his roping flavering: which to cure, take as much Roch-Allom as contains to an Egg, boyl it in three or four spoonfuls of White-wine-Vinegar, with a spoonful of *English Honey*, and an handful of *Columbine-leaves* cut small: wash his Tongue once a day till it be whole: It will be cured in two or three times dressing; you may tye a rag about a stick and wash his mouth.

*Proved*

XXII. *For a Vein that swells upon letting Blood.*

**A**S when the wind gets in it will do, or when a steam miscarries it will do the like. For the cure of which, take white Pitch, black Pitch and Rosin, of each a like quantity; boyl them together, and lay

## for the Cure of Horses.

99

lay it on hot with a flat stick, and then flock it; and this doing once in four or five days, will take down the swelling: do it all over the swelling; if once will not do, do it oftner: he must stand in with dry meat the time of the Cure. You may anoint it with the Oyl of Populeon, or apply Soap and Brandy.

*Proved.*

### XXIII. For a Navel-Gall.

**T**Ake and cut off the loose skin first with a Knife, and apply to it this Salve: Mix as much as a Walnut of Verdigrease, with a Spoonful of Dithaz, and a Pint of Train-oil, and it will cure it: if it be old done and hard, cut out the Crust, and scar the wound within with a hot Iron, and then dip some Cotton in the green Oyntment, and put it in as a Tent.

*Proved.*

### XXIV. For a Horse that pisses blood.

**T**Ake of Tarragon a spoonful, and steep it in White-wine, and as much Poppy-seed beaten, as will lye on a Shilling: give this in the White-wine, and it is a certain Cure: Give this fasting.

*Probatum est.*

### XXV. For the Males.

**Y**ou shall know this by the staring of the hair, above the fore part of his Hoof on his after-Leg, and by the dew that stands on his feet above the hoof. For the cure: Take Lyn-seed-oil, and black Soap, of each a like quantity, boyl them together, and before you anoint his Sore, at any time, wash it clean,

and

and dry it, and then anoint it with the aforeſaid Salve, and it will cure. *Proved.*

XXVI. *For a Horſe burnt with a Mare.*

**Y**OU ſhall know this by the mattering of his Yard within: For Remedy, take a Pint of White-wine, boyl in it a quarter of a pound of Roch-Allom; and when it is boyled and cool, it muſt be ſquirted in with a Syringe, as far into his Yard as you can, this will cure him in a few times doing.

*Proved.*

XXVII. *A precious Oyntment that will cure any Wound, old or new.*

**T**AKE half a pint of refined Sallet-oyl, and put it into a Skillet, then put to it a quarter of a pound of Roſin; boyl theſe together, and when it is boyled, put in three penny-worth of Verdigreaf beaten to a fine Powder; ſtir them well together, and keep it for your uſe; if the wound be hollow and deep, put in a Tent of this Oyntment to the end of the wound, anointing it beſide: *Proved.* Train-oyl and Verdigreaf melted together, will heal and ſkin any wound, well and quickly.

XXVIII. *For a Farcyon.*

**Y**OU muſt firſt give him the drink that is made with running water, in that Receipt which you are to give once in three days: For this Farcyon, you muſt in the morning before he hath drank, give him that Drink made of running Water: the ſame morning ſear the head of every bud with a hot Iron, then

then take yellow Arsenick and beat it to powder, and mix it with black Soap; as much Arsenick as a Hasel-nut, to as much black Soap as a Spoon will hold, or a little more, then lay on a little at a time for once and no more, lay it on no where but just on the top or head of the bud of every Farcyon, as much as contain to a Pease will serve, being laid upon the top or head of every Farcyon, and within one week you shall see them all drop out; then do nothing but anoint the hole with Sallet-oyl once a day till it be whole, and it will cure him; be sure to do as I have directed and no otherwise, for Arsenick is rank Poyson, and a great Eater.

*Proved.*

XXIX. *For Solebatted with going without Shooes.*

**F**Or a Horse that is Solebatted by going without Shooes, you must first pare him close towards the toe, then take a Pen-knife, and with the point cut a little hole through the bottom of the hoof, a matter of half an inch from the toes, and right over the vein, and let the vein bleed a quarter of a pint; then set on his Shooes pretty hollow within the feet, and boyl Tar, Tallow and Turpentine together, and pour it into his foot or feet scalding hot, and stuff in Wool or Hards after it, to keep and make it stay in; you may put in flat sticks between his Shooes, and the bottom of his Hoof, and it is cured with once putting in.

*Proved.*

XXX. *For a Pricking in the foot.*

**W**Hen a Horse is pricked in the foot, when he standeth still he will mostly stand upon his toe: and if at any time a Smith prick a Horse, then



before you take off his Shooe to pare his foot, take your Pincers and try by nipping him with them where the ailment lies, or by knocking in of the Nail upon the head with your Hammer; as soon as you see where the ailment is, take off his Shooe, and pare him by degrees with the Butteris and your drawing-Knife: when you have found the bottom of the wound, and have made it clear to your mind, then take Turpentine, fresh Butter, with a little black Pitch boyled together, and pour it in scalding hot; then dip some Hards or Tow in the same, and stuff it well between the shooe and foot, you may take a piece of upper-leather or sole-leather, and do it between the Shooe and the Hards, or you may splinter it in with sticks. But if it be a long Channel-nail that struck into his foot on the Road as you rid him, or as you wrought him, then pluck the Nail out, and heat it presently red-hot, and put it into the hole so far as it went in at the first: When you have thus seared it with the red-hot Nail, which will keep it from rankling and festring, then melt Turpentine and fresh Butter, with a little black Pitch together, and pour it in scalding hot: then clap on the Shooe, and stuff the foot with Tow or Hards, keeping it in as before you were directed, this will cure certainly. *Proved.*

XXXI. *An Oyntment to skin or heal any wound or hurt.*

**T**AKE two sponfuls of Dogs-grease, one spoonful of black Soap, and as much Roch-Allom burnt and beaten to powder as a Hasel-nut: put the burnt Allom in when the other are melted & taken off the fire, and stir them well together in an earthen Vessel, and

and you may keep it a year or more : Not tryed, but it is very probable.

XXXII. *To take down any Swelling being new, whether it be broke or not broke.*

**T**AKE two pints of red Wine-Vinegar, and boyl in it four handfuls of Foles-foot-leaves, not cut, but wrung apieces with your hand : when it begins to boyl, put in two handfuls of Bay-salt, and when the Salt is melted in it, take it off the fire, and when you use it, heat it as hot as you can endure your hand in it, and with it anoint the place once a day till it be asswaged : This also is a very likely Medicine, but by me not tryed.

XXXIII. *For a Quitterbone, though far gone, and bard to cure.*

**T**AKE off a quarter of the Hoof right under the Quitterbone, that it may drain the better : you may do it after this manner that this Figure directs. Take a drawing Knife, and draw it down after this manner, to the quick on both sides and below, according to the Figure ; then take hold with a pair of Pincers presently below the piece of Hoof, then pull it away ; when it is off, lay a piece of Hares skin to it lightly to stanch the blood ; and do not look to it in twenty four hours ; then take all the Hares skin away, and wash it once with Wine-Vinegar, and scald it with Butter and Salt boyled together as hot as may be, to kill the rankling, and to keep it from dead flesh ; do this three times once every other day : And then take Verdigrease as much as three Hasel-nuts beaten to powder ; then take a



quarter of a pint of Wine-Vinegar, and as much Honey: boyl them together with the Verdigrease, and keep it continually stirring the time it boyls, which must be half an hour; then take it off the fire, and put it into a Pot or Pipkin, and anoint the wound with it once a day till it be whole; when it is whole, then anoint the Hoof to make it grow, with Tar, Tallow, Turpentine, Dogs-grease, boyled together: put in the Turpentine a little before you take it off the fire, and stir it well; keep him dry in the house the time of the cure: forbear to pull off the Hoof if you think you can cure him without, for that will take a long time the curing, to make the Hoof compleat; this is a certain way, but it is none of the readiest: this way is when all other ways fail.

#### XXXIV. *For a Foundred Horse.*

**T**O take out the Soals of his Feet you must pare the Foot thin, then at the end of the Frush you must cut the Hoof after this manner, as this Figure shews. Cut the middle of the Soal just at the Frushes end, in the fashion of a Hens tongue, and raise it a little with the point of your Knife, as you may see in the midst of this Figure, which I have made near the fashion of a Horse Hoof. When you have cut and raised the little piece at the Frushes end, then take your Pen-knife, and with the point thereof, prick the Vein till it bleed; the Vein lyes right under the little piece in the middle of the Foot at the Frushes end; when it hath bled, close down the piece of Hoof again, then let him stand in the Stable the time of the cure, and not drink his water abroad. When you see him halt, and that you think it is festred enough between the Soal and

and the quick, round about the bottom of the Hoof being thus felled, the Soal will come out easier by a great deal, and with less danger of pulling away the Veins with the Soal of the Foot; if you let it fester in this manner, before you pull it out, you must take your drawing Knife, and draw the Hoof to the quick, round about the Soal within the Hoof, as you may see by this Figure: When you have drawn it to the quick round about, then raise the Soal at the Toe, and take hold of it with a pair of Pincers, and pull it upwards to the heel, and so pull it quite out: when it is out, apply Hares-Wool to stanch the blood, and within 24 hours take away the Wool again; then wash the Soal of the Foot with Chamber-lye; then set on the Shooe, and put in Pitch, Turpentine and Hogs-grease melted together, of each an equal proportion, dipping Hards or Wool in the same Medicine, and apply it to the bottom of the Foot; stuff it in with Splinters, or a Soal of Leather to keep it in; apply this Medicine three times in a week or ten days; three times is enough: You must never take out the Soals of both his fore-feet at one time, for then he will never be able to stand. Hereafter in another Chapter I will give you the practice of another, which in my judgment is far more easie for the Beast than to fester the Foot; which is, first to cord the Foot-lock hard, that it may not bleed, then to draw round about the Soal to the quick, and so to pull out the Soal without festering, by cording of it; it will not bleed at all after you have pulled out the Soal, so that you need not to take care to stanch the blood: but as soon as you have pulled out the Soal, you may wash it with Chamber-lye, and then put in the aforesaid materials: After you have set on the Shooe, stuff it as you were before directed. *Proved.*

XXXV. *For a Splint.*

**Y**OU must cast the Horse first; then you must beat the place with a bloud-stick or other stick till you feel it soft; then steam it in three or four places, upon the Splent, and squeeze out the blood with your Stick, your Fingers and Thumb: then take as much Hogs-grease as a Walnut, as much Bole-armoniack, and Brimstone as much; beat these two last to powder, and mix them with grease, and spread it upon a sheet of gray Paper, and lay it upon the splent, then heat a Brick very hot, and dry the medicine in with it, then melt some black Pitch in an Iron pan, and dip some flocks in it, and dab it on all over the splent close, that it may lye on sure; and when the flocks come off, the splent will come out: but if the flocks come off before the splent, then lay on more flocks till the splent come out; and as soon as it does come out, wash it with a little White-wine-vinegar, and then anoint it with Sallet-oil and Turpentine melted together; anoint it cold till it be whole, once a day, and in a weeks time the splent will come out and be whole. This you may do, but it makes a great blemish; it takes away hair and flesh, and sometimes the hair comes no more. You shall have a Receipt hereafter for this purpose, that will not take off the hair nor break the flesh: It is a very gallant one, that will lay the splent flat in a few hours.

XXXVI. *For a through great Splent.*

**B**EAT it and steam it, as you were directed in the other; then take as much Crown-Sope as an Egg, and mix it with as much Bole-armoniack on purpose that none may know that you use any thing but Sopes,  
lay

lay it on a piece of gray Paper, and heat a Brick hot and dry it in, as you did the former : this is much of the nature of the former. *Proved.*

XXXVII. *For a Splent great or small, an excellent one.*

**I**F it were never medled with before, be it great or small, this will cure it : First, Take a piece of Leather as broad again as will cover the Splent, then take of Cantharides, which is a Fly that you may have at the Apothecaries, and beat them to powder, or very fine: take of them half a quarter of an ounce at a time, mixed with as much Nerve-oyl as contains to half a Walnut ; bray them well together, and lay them upon a piece of Leather, and bind it on for eight or ten hours, and then take it off, and stroke it down with your Fingers and Thumb twice or thrice a day, till you see it quite fallen : This Medicine will dissolve the Splent into a Water : and you shall see it sweat out drops of Water, doing it with your Fingers and Thumb every day. If it be a great through Splent, lay it on twice, if it be a little one, but once doing will serve ; he must stand in all the time of the Cure ; you may ride him after you have taken the Medicine off : take a piece of Tape to bind it on : Make no more at a time than you shall use, it will not last as to do good. This will not diminish a hair, but sink it flat. This Medicine is not to be laid to a Splent that hath been formerly medled with, where the swelling still remains, and the hair is come off, and the skin very thin ; The Medicine is too strong, and will soon eat the thin skin apieces in such a case, *Proved to be right good.*



XXXVIII. *A Water to cure any old Wound, or green, in Man or Beast.*

**T**AKE half a pound of Bole-armoniack, a quarter of a pound of white Copperas, two ounces of Roch-Allom ; beat your Roch-Allom and Copperas small, and put them into a Pipkin, and melt them together, and when they are cold, put them with the Bole-armoniack into a Mortar, and beat them all together to a fine powder : then take a pottle of Running Spring-water, where the Spring boyls with a blew sand at the bottom, if possible, rather than in any other Spring ; set this pottle of Spring-water on the fire with a close Skillet, till it be scalding hot, and then put it into a clean earthen Pitcher, and put two spoonfuls of this Powder into the Water, and stir it up well together, before you let it stand to settle; and when the Water hath stood two or three days settling, then skum off the uppermost froth, put the water into another Pitcher clean from the Dregs, and afterward use it when you have occasion : But when you use it either for Man or Beast, warm the Water as hot as can be endured either by Man or Beast : When you wash any wound, of a Man, let the Cloth lye a while wet upon the wound, and wet a double Cloth in the same water, and bind it on plaisterwise, renewing it two or three times a day : For any wound, old or new, always wash it first with this Water, and then apply the green Ointment to it afterwards, which you shall find in Rec. VII.

*Proved,*

XXXIX.

XXXIX. *A Receipt to cure a Horse-Pestilence.*

**T**AKE of wormwood a handful, of Rue a handful, of Celandine-roots a handful, to be cut small; then put them into a quart of Aloes-Milk, boyl it till it comes to a pint. Then strain it, and put to it half a pound of fresh Butter, then give it the Horse in the Morning fasting, pretty warm, and keep him from drinking two days, and if he does drink, let it be cold water; and if Grasse may be had, let him eat Grasse.

*Another Receipt for a Febula, or Horse-Pestilence.*

**T**AKE one ounce of Storax, one ounce of Benjamin, one ounce of Betony, a quarter of an ounce of *English* Saffron; these being beaten all to a powder, put them into a quart of new Ale, and give it to the Horse to drink: Let him not have any warm water, but keep him as before from any drink two days, and let him eat Grasse, if to be had.

XL. *For the Yellows.*

**Y**OU shall know this by his faint sweating at the roots of his Ears, and the white of his Eyes will be yellow; you must first let him blood in the Neck-veins, or on both sides of the Neck; then take Elder-leaves, Celandine, and Camomile, of each a handful: cut them small, and give them to the Horse in a pint and a half of the best Beer being heated luke-warm, fasting. You may run your Cornet-horn into the third roof in the palate of his Mouth; keep him warm, and give him warm water

ter to drink for a day or two, and this drench will certainly cure him. *Proved.*

XLII. For a Chest-Founder.

**T**O know this, he will go crimpling, and stand straddling, and covet to lye down: Take six penny-worth of the Oyl of Peter, and bathe it well into his breatt, rub it in well at the first, then dry it lightly with a hot Iron: this with once doing will be a perfect cure: Not tried, but very likely.

XLIII. For a swelling under the Jaws, when a Horse hath the strangling.

**F**Or a swelling of this nature, take nothing else but Bacon-grease and anoint it, which will, if it be hard, suddenly soften it with twice anointing; and when it is full ripe let it out: Some use to burn the swelling with a Candle before they anoint it, and it will cause it to break the sooner; let it out with the point of a Pen-knife, and sometimes there will come out a pint of filth; when it is cleap out, put in some white Salt: When any sore is soft, let it out with the point of a Pen-knife; lay it draining as much as you can, with all the advantages you can: If it be a sore in any other place than the Throat, rot it with Bacon-grease, and open it, and put it out, and heal it with the green Oyntment mentioned in Rec. XXXVIII. You must have a care of Veins, that you do not cut them. *Proved.*

XLIII. For a Sore.

**I**F a Horſe hath a ſore in his ſide or elſewhere, rot it firſt with Bacon-greaſe, then open it in the midſt, and let the hole be low enough; that you may put your finger in from the middle of the wound downwards, cut it in the midſt, and ſlaſh it quite down to the bottom, it will drain the better, and heal the ſooner a great deal: Heal it up with the green Oyntment, dreſſing it once a day; and always before you lay your green Oyntment to the wound, waſh it with the rare water to heal any wound inſt. This is that I adviſe you, when you waſh a wound with this water, dry it with a clean linnen cloth, before you lay your green Oyntment to: This water and green Oyntment will heal any wound old or new, if you obſerve and do as I have directed. If there be any proud fleſh in any ſore, be the ſore in what place it will, ſcald it with Butter and Sale, and it will eat it off, and help to heal it preſently. *Proved.*

XLIV. To make a Horſe piſſe, that is troubled with the Wind-Cholick, or Obſtruction in the Bladder.

**T**AKE a quarter of a pound of Caſtle-Soap, and ſcrape it ſmall, then put to it two ounces of Dialthea, which you may have at the Apothecaries; bray them well together in a Mortar, and then make them up in Balls about the bigness of a Barbours Waſh-ball, and keep them for your uſe; they will laſt a year: one Ball crumbled into a pint and a half of ſtrong Beer heat ſcalding-hot, will diſſolve the Ball; then let it ſtand till it be but luke-warm, and give it the Beaſt with a horn; with this he will empty


pty beyond expectation, as long as any thing is in him : Let him fast an hour after he takes it.

*Proved.*

**XLV.** *To cure a Poll-Evil, which grows upon the top of the Head.*

**Y**OU may know it when it begins to breed, by its growing bigger than ordinary, upon the top of the head : if it be pretty big, take a hot iron, and sear it round about the Poll-evil, till the skin look yellow ; as this Figure doth shew you.



 Then take another red-hot Iron, made of this fashion ; and make so many holes with this Iron, as the Cross will give you leave, and no further : make all these holes with the point of this last Iron, within the compass of the seared place, as you may see the pricks in the Figure, so many pricks so many holes ; the bigger it is, you may make the more, the lesser the fewer ; these holes being thus made, take a piece of yellow Arsenick as big as a wheat-kernel, and put it into one hole, and so do the like to every hole ; then at the same time, lay on every hole over the Arsenick, a piece of black Soap to stop the Arsenick in : after all these, beat some Arsenick fine to powder, and mix as much of the Powder with black Soap as contains to half a Walnut, to anoint the place where first the Iron seared it round, but no where else, and within three weeks it will be ready to come out ; all that is within the compass of the round Ring, the Arsenick will eat to the bottom ; if you see it hang but by a little at the bottom, then you may adventure to cut it out, otherwise let it alone three or four days longer,

longer, and then cut it out close at the bottom: After you have cut it clean out, then wash it with the water that is good to cure any old Ulcer, or green wound; and if you see or find with your Instrument, that there is any hole at the bottom, or suspect that there is any dead flesh there, squirt the water aforesaid with a Syringe or Squirt to the bottom, till all the dead flesh be eaten out: this water will do it quickly, which when you see, anoint it with Sallet-Oyl upon a feathers end once a day, till it be quite whole: if the hole go forwards to his ears, let him stand in at dry meat; if the hole go backward, let him run abroad at Grass; because, by holding down his head, the filthy matter cannot spread further, but must come back to the main Wound; this Observation will much further the Cure. Again, if this Disease happen in Winter, when no Flies are stirring, anoint it and heal it with Sallet-Oyl: If this Disease happen in Summer, when the Flies are busie, anoint it then with Train-Oyl, which you shall have at the Curriers; if this Disease of a Poll-Evil, or a Fistula, chance to be over-grown with Bags or Bunnies of proud flesh, while you are healing of it, then do nothing but scald it with Butter and Salt, and it will soon remedy that.

XLVII. For a Fistula.

**T**He mark of the Fistula is after this manner: the Fistula always hangs on either side the top of the Cress, as you may see by this Figure. The same way, and the same means will cure this, as you use to the Poll-evil: with the Instrument with a Cross, you must make so many holes as you see p<sup>ks</sup> within the Fi-





gure, and you must do in every thing as you did in the last: Mark, you must make three holes upon the top of the Wollis, which is the top of the Neck or Crest, which is in the midst of the Fistula, and you must make two holes on either side. *Proved.*

**XLVII.** *For the Plague, Pestilence, Garget, or Murrain, in Horse or Beast onely.*

**Y**OU must not let blood in this Disease: you shall know it by these signs: He will hang down his head, and will gum thick Atter at the Eyes, as big as your fingers end, and much, and will go weakly, staggering, and his head will oftentimes swell very big; and will fall away of his flesh suddenly, and yet feed very well. The Cure is thus: Take as much Diapente as a Hasel-nut, as much Dialphera, as much London-Treacle, as much Mithridate, as much Saffron, a handful of Wormwood, an handful of red Sage, Rhubarb as much as an Hasel-nut, two Cloves of Garlick; boyl all these together in two pints of good Beer, till it comes to a pint and a half, then give it him luke-warm fasting, and keep him very warm; and the next thing you give him must be a Mash made of ground Malt: let him drink warm water for a week, and sometimes bursten Oats, now and then a little clean sweet Hay; it is his sweating that does the Cure: If one Drink will do no good, give him another three days after to make all sure; it will not make him much sick: half of the proportions of this drink will do wondrous well for a Cow, if she have the like Disease. Not tryed, but very probable.

**XLVIII.**

**XLVIII.** For a Horse or Cow that is poisoned by licking of Venome, or is over-gorged with Clover-grass, or Turnips, by greedy feeding.

**E**ither Horse or Cow will swell and flaver very much, and will be so extremely full, as if they were ready to burst; and the skin to crack; if they drink soon after it, so much the worse: but if he be alive when you give him this, it will cure him in a quarter of an hour, for it will work as soon as it is in his body: For the Cure, Take a quarter of a pound of Castle-Soap, and scrape it thin, and put to it two ounces of Dialphera, which you shall have at the Apothecaries; bray them in a Mortar small together, and make them up in Balls as big as a Barbers Wall-ball, and lay them by till you have occasion to use them: one Ball is enough for one Beast to cure this Disease; you must dissolve the Ball in a pint and a half of strong Beer scalding hot, and give it lukewarm, the hotter the Beer be, the sooner it will dissolve; but if haste require, crumble the Ball in as small as you can, and give it him down in a horn, he will soon be empty with pissing and scowring.

*Proved.*

**XLIX.** For a Horse or Cow that maketh red Water.

**T**ake three or four Onions, one pound of lean Beef roasted on the coals till you may beat it to powder, Bole-armoniack as much as the bigness of an Egg, one handful of gray Salt; chop and beat them all together, and put them all into a quart of strong Beer: take Ale if you can get it, and give it to the Beast, and presently after it, give her a dishful of

Cheese-runnets of almost a pint ; do but this once or twice fasting, and let the Beast fast two or three hours after it, and it will cure. *Proved.*

*L. For the mad Staggers.*

**T**He signs of this Disease are : He will foam at the mouth white, and will seem dull-headed, and will have at that time a blue Film over his eyes, and will wander much up and down : be sure to let him blood on both his Neck-veins, within one or two days after he complains, and in the third furrow in the palat of his mouth, with the point of a Cornet-horn : you may run an Awl into the Gristles of his Nose, something above his Nostrils ; the bleeding at the Mouth and the Nose will ease the pain in his head. The cure is, Take a handful of Rue, by some called Herb-grass, three Cloves of Garlick, a spoonful of Salt, a spoonful of Vinegar, and two spoonfuls of *Aqua vite* ; bruise all these together well, and then put the one half into one Ear, and the other half into the other Ear, with a little Wool after it ; put the Liquor in with a spoon first, and then the Herbs, and then the Wool ; and then tye or stitch with a Needle and Thread the Ears up very fast, with two lissing Garters ; then presently fume him at the Nostrils through a Funnel, with the stalks and pillings of Garlick, beaten in a Mortar with Mastick or Frankincense mixed together ; of these make Pellets as big as a Bullet, and lay them upon a Chafing-dish of fresh Coals, and the smoke will go up through the Funnel into the Head, and much comfort and cleanse the Brain ; Fume his Head three times a day till you see him mend : at the same time beat Red-weed-seed, which grows in Winter-Corn, by some called Poppy-seed, very

very small, and give as much of the powder at each Nostril as will lye upon a Six-pence, in two half hornfuls of any Beer, do this every morning : Or thus, if you cannot get Poppy-seed, then give him white Poppy-water, which you may likewise have at the Apothecaries, and give at each Nostril a spoonful and a half at each time : It will make him sleep so soundly, that you may walk upon him from the Head to the Tail, and he will not stir ; he will lye as if he were dead for a time ; his sleeping will mightily refresh him : After you have given it unto him, you will see him, before he fall down, to buckle and sally, till at last he will tumble down. Let him stand in a dark room and warm, where he may see no light ; let him have bursten Oats, and Mashies of ground Malt ; let his Drink be cold Water : that which you put in his Ears, must remain there twenty four hours and no longer : Put Wool, Flax, Lint, or a Rag after it ; stitching is better than a Garter, for that will make the hair come white. *Proved a rare Cure.*

### LI. For the Water-Farcy on.

**I**T will come by the Horses feeding upon low watry Ground, and in Pits where the Grasse grows above the Water, for there he will lick the water up as well as the Grasse : this kind of feeding will cause Horses sometimes to swell mightily under the Belly and Chaps : To cure it, cause a Smith to make an Iron like a fleam at a Nails-rod end, then heat it red-hot, and strike it easily but just through the skin in many places upon the swelling, and no where else, and you shall see abundance of yellow, gray, oily water come out pouring : this being done, wash it with Chamber-lye and Salt, as hot as you can endure your

hand in it, wash it but three or four times, and it is a certain cure. If the swelling be very big, mix with the Chamber-lye and Salt as much Bole-armoniack as a Walnut; boyl them together, and wash it.

*Proved.*

### LII. *For the Ives.*

**Y**OU may see them grow in a Rowl betwixt the hinder part of his Jaw-bone and his Neck; if they get the roots of his Ears, there is great danger: The cure is, Let blood in both the Neck-veins, then take two Spoonfuls of Pepper, as much Hogs-grease, and as much Vinegar, and work them up together, and put them one half into one Ear, and the other into the other Ear, and Wool, Flax, Lint, or Rags, which you have at hand after it, and stitch up his Ears close with a Needle and Thread for twenty four hours, and it is a certain cure. *Proved.*

In the time of the cure, let him stand in the House; give it him fasting, any water cold or warm, any meat, onely let him stand in the house three or four days after it.

### LIII. *For the Wind-Colick.*

**I**T comes by means of long fasting, and then the Wind gets into the Bag-gut with one end, and then when the Horse comes to Meat, he feeds so hungrily that he never chews his meat, and it goes down unchewed and undigested, and stops the Wind in the Gut, that it puts the Horse to abundance of misery. It causeth the ill-me in the Gut to be so extremely hot, that the Horse will do nothing but tumble and wallow, and covet much to lye upon his back, with  
all

all four Feet right up : The cure is, First, To prick him in the Mouth and let him bleed well, then rub his Mouth well with a handful of Salt, then give him this Drink. Take a pint of Brine and boyl it, but do not scum it, and put thereto a handful of new Hens-dung, and give him it lukewarm, at any time when this Disease happens ; then ride him an hour before he drink, and three hours after it. The Signs: He will stand crimpling with all four together, and lay himself down very easily, and will rather look full than empty : If he be cold in the Mouth, no cure : if he be warm in the mouth, there is hope in four or five hours to abate the pain. Either present Cure, or present Death.

*Proved.*

LIV. *For a Film in an Horses Eye.*

**T**AKE a piece of the saltest Beef you can possibly get, dry it in an Oven, and beat it to powder ; take as much of Liquorish-sticks, dry them, and beat them to fine powder, and searse it through a Cloth : blow the powder into his Eye once a day, and it will take off the film in three or four times doing : If a Rheum attend the Eye at the same time, to stop it, dip a little Flax or Hards in some melted Rosin, and lay it in the hole of the Horses Eye: I was told it would stop any Rheum, but have not tried it.

LV. *To cure a Mallender.*

**F**IRST rub it dry with a Cloth, then anoint it with Crown-sope and red Mercury precipitate mixed together : when you have anointed it once, pluck the hairs which grow in it, and upon the edge of it, out ; then dress him three times more ; once in two days



dress it, then anoint it with Sallet-oyl, and it is cured.  
But always before you anoint it you must rub it dry.

*Proved,*

LVI. *For an Apoplexy, or Palsie.*

**T**O know this Palsie, the Signs are these: It either will take him in the Neck, that he cannot put down his head to the ground, or in the After-parts that he cannot rise; the sinews of his flank will be hard, if you feel them with your hand. The cure is thus: Take six penny-worth of the Oyl of *Peter*, and anoint the place grieved with it at one time, and dry it in with a hot Iron: if you anoint the after-part of him, then lay upon him the Litter of a hot reeking Muckhil, and lay a Cloth over that to hold it on, renewing it four times a day: If it be in the Neck, after you have anointed it and dried it in, make a Thumb-band of the longest hottest Dunghil-litter that you can get, and wind it round about his Neck something loose, that he may eat and drink: Let the Thumb-band be so long, that it may go so often about his Neck that it may reach from his Shoulders to his Ears.

*Probatum est.*

LVII. *For a Farcyon that lies all over the Body of a Horse.*

**F**irst, Bleed those Buds that do not dye, wash them with the water that you have for any old Ulcer, and this will cure them and kill them: wash them once a day, then take a pottle of running water, and boyl it in two spoonfuls of Hemp-seed beaten to powder, and two handfals of Herb-grace cut small; boyl all these together, till it come to a pint and a half, and

and give it the Horse fasting; do this once in three days, or three times in nine days, let him stand in the night before, and not drink; you may give him three or four hours after it a Mash, or warm water, then Hay. This very drink given to a Cow or Bullock after letting blood in the neck, will make them thrive exceeding fast, if it be given them at the spring of the year, and then turned out to Grass. If a Cow or Bullock do not thrive, but is lean, scurvy, hide-bound, and her hair stand right up, do but let blood, and give her this Drink, and she will mend presently upon it.

*Proved.*

*LVIII. For a Farcion onely in the Neck or Head of a Horse.*

**F**irst, let blood in the Neck-veins, then take two spoonfuls of the juyce of Hemlock, and two spoonfuls of the juyce of Housleek, and mix them together, and put the one half into one Ear, and the other half into the other Ear; you must mix two spoonfuls of Sallet-Oyl with the Housleek and Hemlock, and then put them all together into his Ears. Put a little Wool, Flax or Tow after it, stitch up his Ears, and at the end of twenty four hours, unstitch them and take out the stuffing; give him a Mash two or three hours after, and warm water to drink: You may give him any meat to eat, onely wash the Buds with the Water for an old Ulcer, till he be whole.

*Proved.*

**LIX.** *A true Medicine to make an Horse scour that is hide-bound, that is moulten, that does not thrive nor fill; and to lay his Coat if it stand right up.*

**I**F a Horse be moulten, give him this scouring Medicine suddenly fasting: If an Horses skin cleave to his ribs, we say he is hide-bound: and if an Horses Coat stand right up staring, and do not lye smooth, or if he do not fill well, it is then to be judged the Horse is surfeited, foul, and out of health. To cure all these at once or twice at the most, and make your Beast thrive gallantly, give him this scouring Medicine: Take half an ounce of Aloes and beat it to powder, and put it into a pint of Butter made afterwards round; put the Aloes in three or four Balls of Butter, and rowl the Balls in as much of the powder of Jallop as will lye upon a Six-pence: wash down the Balls with a pint and a half of strong Beer luke-warm: Let him fast three or four hours after, then give him a Mash or bursten Oats, and warm water to drink, for two or three days. Ride, or work him moderately, and the Horse will thrive the better.

*Proved often.*

**LX.** *To stop a thin Scouring in Cow or Bullock, or any other Creature.*

**T**AKE a quarter of a pint of Verjuyce, and as much Bole-armoniack beaten to powder as a Walnut; stir it well up and down in the Verjuyce, and give it to the Beast.

*Proved.*

LXI. *To kill Lice in Cattle.*

**T**AKE a broad woollen Lint, as broad as your hand that will go round about his neck ; then wet the Lint well in Train-Oyl, and sew it about the Beasts neck, and the Lice will come to it, and it will kill them if there were never so many : Daub some about the Beast in several places, and they will come to it, and it will kill them. No Flies in Summer will come near any wound or sore wherewith this is applyed, for it will kill them. *Proved.*

LXII. *To make Hoofs that are brittle grow quickly, and to make them firm and strong.*

**T**AKE of Garlick seven ounces, Herb-grace three handfuls, of Allom beaten to powder seven ounces, of old Hogs-grease two pound, of Asses-dung, or for want of it Cow-dung, an handful; beat and cut them all small, and mix them all together, and boyl them all together well ; then with this Oyntment stop his fore-feet, between his Shooes and the bottom of his feet, and keep it on with a piece of leather, or sole-leather of a shooe : let it be betwixt his foot and shooe. And besides, you should do well to anoint the out-sides of his Hoofs all over ; do this till you see his brittle Hoofs to grow tough and strong, you will find the effect to be great.

*Proved.*

LXIII. *To heal a Navel-Gall, Sore-back, or a Set-fast.*

**T**AKE a quarter of a pint of Train-Oyl, and boyl in it as much beaten Verdigrease as half a Walnut ;

nut; put it into a pot and keep it for your use : This very Medicine will heal any Navel-Gall, Set-fast, or Sore-back suddenly: And no Flies will dare to touch or come near it ; if they do, they dye presently. *Proved.*

LXIV. *For a Sinew-strain in the fore or after-leg.*

**A** Sinew-Strain is always upon the Sinews which grow behind on the fore-leg, and behind upon the Sinews of the after-leg, above the foot-lock-joynt, upon the back-part of the fore-leg, and upon the back-part of the after-leg, much about the ancle-bone ; it will be swelled and knotted when it is thus over-strained : you may see and discern it by his going, and by the swelling ; if you nip it between your fingers and thumb, he will quinch at it very much. For the Cure: Take Nerve-Oyl and Turpentine of each a penny-worth, and mix them together, and lay it on at two or three several times or more, till it be well ; and always dry it in well with a hot bar of Iron when you lay it on, anoint it two or three days distance, you must rest him in the time of the Cure. *Probatum.*

LXV. *A Scouring-Drink.*

**W**Hen you let a Horse blood, save the blood with a bowl or dish, and put thereunto a handful of Salt, take the blood as it comes from him, and stir it and the Salt together with your hand, that it may not clot, and give it him again to drink with a Horn fasting : whether it be the blood of another Horse, or his own blood, it matters not much. Give him warm water to drink once.

*Proved.*

LXVI.

LXVI. *For brittle Hoofs.*

**A** Noint them with an equal proportion of Dogs-grease, Turpentine, and Tar, all boyled together a little while, and it will make them grow strong and tough; put in the Turpentine but a little before you take it off the fire.

*Proved.*

LXVII. *For a Horse that is moulten, and breaks out.*

**W** Hen you see Swellings appear like Bags, about the girding place under the Horses belly, First, anoint it with Bacon-grease once every day till it be rotten; then lance it in one place to make the filth come out, with the point of your Pen-knife; stroke your hand pretty hard upon it, squeeze out all the filth, then anoint the Swelling with Train-Oyl all over, and wind a linnen-cloth about a sticks end, and dip it in Train-Oyl, and with it wash the wound well within. If the Swelling run under the Belly to the Cods-ward, then get a Smith with a Nail at a rods end, to beat a piece in the fashion of a Fleme; then heat it red-hot, and strike him just through the skin, in six or eight several places, thereafter as the largeness of the Swelling is, and as your discretion shall guide you; when you have flemmed it, and squeezed it, that all the filth is out, then daub on Chamber-lye and Salt scalding hot, and then anoint it with Train-Oyl within and without, Train-Oyl will heal it alone; anoint it once a day at first within and without, and once in two or three days as it heals: You must always have a care of any wound that the cold & wind get not in; if it do, it will swell much, and in such a case you must anoint about



bout the wound, all over the Swelling, with the Oyl of Populeon, and that will take the Swelling down certainly, be it in what place it will.

*Both proved.*

LXVIII. *A Scouring-Drink to cleanse his Kidneys, if they be pained.*

**F**irst, heat a pint of strong Beer in a Skillet, and scum it, and put in a penny-worth of Treacle-Jean, and give it him luke-warm: it will cleanse his Kidneys and Guts much: three or four hours after it, give him a Mash, warm water the first day and no longer. Let him stand two or three days.

*Probatum.*

LXIX. *For a Fleshy Knot that is moving from the place where it grows.*

**L**et it grow where it will, if you by feeling upon it with your fingers and thumb feel it moving, and something soft upon the place where it grows; then take the Knot in your hand, and with the point of your Knife, slit a hole in the middle, and cut the Knot out: if it bleed much, stanch it with a hot Iron to stanch the blood; then stuff the wound with Hares-wool, or Coneys-wool, but Hares-wool is best to stanch blood. The next day take out the wool, and wash it clean with White-wine-Vinegar; then dry the wound with a clean linnen-cloth; then heal it with your blue Medicine or green Oyntment, which I take to be best; but the blue Medicine is good. Always before you anoint the wound, wash it with the water which you have for an old Ulcer, if it grow rank; if not, you shall not need to do it:

Tie

Tie a rag about it to keep the dirt out. Dress it once a day till it be whole. *Proved.*

LXX. For a Cow that hath a Garget in her Dug or Udder.

**Y**OU shall know when she hath the Garget in her Dug, for then she will not give down her milk: For remedy, let her stand in some house or yard the night before you let blood; the next day in the Morning fasting, let her blood on both sides of the neck, then give her this Drink: Take a handful of Higtaper, by some called Mullin, and cut it small; it groweth by the sides of dikes, and in high-ways; it hath a long stem with a broad woolly-leaf; and afterwards boyl it a little in a pint of Beer, and give it her luke-warm fasting: This with once giving, will make her give down her milk freely. *Proved.*

LXXI. For a Ring-Bone.

**A** Ring-bone grows just upon the instep, as we use to say, upon the fore-part of the hinder Leg, just about the Hoof, in a hard knob as big as a Walnut: First, The Beast must be cast, or else you must tye up his contrary Leg with a strong Rope, till you strike four or five holes in the Ring-bone, at the very edge of it. Let every hole be an equal distance from other: then take white Mercury or Arsnick beaten to powder, as much as will lye upon your Fleme, and put it into one hole, and as much likewise in the same manner into every hole, binding it on for twenty four hours.

LXXII.

LXXII. *Another for the same.*

**T**AKE quick and unslaked Lime, newly taken from the Kiln, which must be well burned, & the best burned you may know by its lightness; make your Lime into fine powder, and lay it upon the place swelled all along of a good thickness, and bind upon it a Linnen Cloth made fast about the foot, and so put the Horse into the Water a pretty while; then take him forth and unbind his foot, and he is infallibly cured.

For the burning of the Lime in the Water does kill the Ring-bone even unto the root thereof: with this Receipt I have cured not so few as an hundred Horses. But when you are thus to dress your Horse, let him be brought close to the Water wherein he is to be ridden, that so soon as you have applyed the Lime unto the Ring-bone, you may presently put him into the Water.

*Proved.*

LXXIII. *Observations concerning the ordering of Cattel, as Cows, &c. in the time of feeding, when there is great fulness of Grass: As in the Months of May, June and July.*

**T**HEN in those months must be your care to let them blood: For at that time of the year they never digest their Meat so well as in Winter: And those raw digestions do hinder many inward passages, which causeth bad blood. Which to help, you must let them blood in the beginning of the month of May, & let them stand in some close Yard the Night before; And the Night after, give them a handful of Hemp-seed apiece: Now for the Pestilence, Gargil, and Murrain, they are infectious, contagious Diseases,  
none

none like them; they proceed many times from hard driving, heats and colds, hunger, or any other thing breeding corrupt humours, as by drinking when they are hot, or feeding upon gross, foul and corrupted foods, as in low grounds after Floods, when the Grass is unpurged, and the like. And sometimes it cometh from some evilin fluences of the Planets, corrupting the Plants and Fruits of the Earth: And sometimes from Cattel too: And from divers such like Causes. But however, when these Diseases begin, certain it is that they are most infectious, and if there be not great care taken, they will leave but few alive of a great many, for the one infects the other. These Diseases are easily known, they will hang down their heads, and run Atter at the Eyes, will swell on the Lips, and all on one side of the Cheek, and under the Tongue, and sometimes at the roots of the Ears: The cure is, To separate the sound from the sick, a good distance of place from the Air where the sick breathe, then let them blood on the Neck-veins, and give every one a spoonful of Diapente in a pint of Verjuyce: If you cannot get Diapente, take a spoonful of Treacle-jean, and give it in a pint of Verjuyce; Thus give them a good quantity of old Urine, and a handful of new Hens-dung, stir the Urine and Hens-dung well together, and give it to the Beast lukewarm, keep him in the House a Week after: These for Cows or Bullocks be prime Receipts. *Proved.*

LXXIV. *For a Bite, Blow, or Film in the Eye.*

**T**AKE as much white Copperas as the bigness of half a Walnut, and beat it very fine, the same quantity of Verdigrease beaten to powder: Bray these two well together upon an Iron Spade; or in a  
K Mortar,

Mortar, then mix them with as much fresh Butter as a Walnut ; put into the Eye as much of this as the bigness of a Pease once a day, until it be well and clear.

*Proved.*

**LXXV.** *A precious Ointment for an Horses Eye, either for Bite, Blow, or Film.*

**G**O to the Apothecaries, and buy the stone called *Lapis Calaminaris*, it is of a blue colour ; heat it red-hot, then take it out and quench it presently in a pint and a half of White-wine, and so heat it, and quench it as afore, twelve times one after another ; then add unto the Wine half so much of the Juyce of Housleek, well stamped and strained, and stir them up well together : dip a feather in this Water, and dress it two or three times a day, till the sight be recovered.

*Proved.*

**LXXVI.** *A gallant Scouring to make a Beast thrive Winter or Summer.*

**T**Ake a handful of Groundsel, called by some Ser-tion, half a handful of red Sage, half a handful of dried or green Wormwood stript; you must shred them all small, and boyl them in a pint and a half of strong Beer ; and when it comes off the fire, put in a piece of Butter, as big as an Egg ; You may put in as much of the Powder of Mechoacan as will lye upon a Shilling at three or four times. I know it purgeth slime and moulten Grease in lumps, and works very kindly ; give him warm water to drink, Evening and Morning for three or four days after : A Mash of Malt once a day, or once in two days, if your Horse do not fill well, and that his Coat stand right up staring, or be hide-bound, give him this. *Proved.*

**LXXVII.**

## LXXVII.

**I**F you let blood in the Neck or Temple-vein, you muſt always cord the Horſe: Take this for a Rule.

LXXVIII. *For a Strangling in the Spring.*

**T**AKE a handful of Elder-buds, as much of dried Wormwood, half an handful of Mercury, as much of Tanſey: cut theſe ſmall, and boyl them in a pint of ſtrong Beer, and it will ſerve for three Drinks, three days diſtance between Drink and Drink. Give it him faſting in Mornings, give a Maſh three hours after, warm water for a day or two: let him ſtand in all the while. If he be ſwelled between the Jaws, anoint it with Bacon-greaſe once in two or three days, till it be rotted, and then let it out, and heal it with your healing-Salves. *Proved.*

LXXIX. *To kill Lice in Horſes or Cows.*

**T**AKE two penny-worth of Quick-ſilver, and work it well with faſting-spittle upon the palm of your hand till the Quick-ſilver be killed: then take the Whites of two Eggs and bray them with the Quick-ſilver and ſpittle, till they be as an Oyntment; ſpread theſe upon a Liſt that will go round about the Beaſt's neck; let it be as broad as your fingers; firſt cut away the hair, and then tye your Liſt round about, and ſew it up; they will come to it, and it will kill abundance of them: And in ſeveral places about the Beaſt daub on ſome Train-Oyl.



LXXX. *To make a Horse Stale or Piss.*

**T**AKE as much Castle-Soap as a Walnut, boyl it in a pint of strong Beer a little while, and give it him luke-warm, it will make him piss. *Proved.*

LXXXI. *For an inward Bruise with any Fume or Stub.*

**T**AKE a pint and a half of strong Beer, and one ounce of Bole-armoniack, and boyl them a little together, and give it him with a Horn luke-warm. It is very good for an inward bruise of a Beast. The greasie sort is best. *Proved.*

LXXXII. *For a Horse that hath rent his flesh about the Belly, or elsewhere, or for any new Wound.*

**T**AKE a pint of White-wine-Vinegar the sharpest you can get, boyl in it half a quarter of a pound of Bole-armoniack; after it hath boyled a little, and when it comes off the fire, put into it a little piece of Butter, and bathe the place grieved once in two days, and in two or three times dressing it will cure. This is a plain and easie Cure.

LXXXIII. *For an old Cold with a Cough.*

**T**AKE as much fresh or salt Butter as an Egg, and make it hollow as a Pye, and put as much Tar into it as a Walnut; then close up the Ball very round, and roul it in the seeds and strippings of Wormwood cut small: To make two Balls of the Butter and Tar is better; give him this in a pint and a half of strong Beer in the Morning fasting, having stood in the night before, keep him in the house  
three

three or four days after, give him warm water, the cold juſt taken off it, for two days, the water muſt be no warmer at any time : If you ſee he doth not fill well, and hath left his coughing, then four or five days after give him the ſame again, and order him as before : When you have given him this, ride him a hand-gallop for three or four miles, till he ſweat well ; but a mile before you come at home, ride him very ſoftly to cool him: Set him up warm, litter him well, clothe him with a couple of warm clothes, tie him up to the Rack upon the Bit for three or four hours, if it be five or ſix hours it matters not ; when you unbit him give a Maſh firſt, or warm water firſt ; then clean Hay, and take off one of his Clothes ; after one or two days you may work him, ſo you do it moderately : This is not ſo good for a new Cold as for an old Cold.

*Proved.*

**LXXXIV.** *For a Strangling in the Guts : the Cough of the Lungs : for clearing the Pipes, and giving much Breath.*

**I**F you be to run your Horſe for a wager, give him two of theſe Balls a week before. I make them thus : Take as much of freſh or ſalt Butter as the bigneſs of an Egg and an half, part it in the midſt as near as you can, hollow it in the faſhion of a Pye, mix and bray together with your Butter half an ounce of Annifeeds beaten to powder, then make a Pye of your Butter and Annifeeds thus mixed, and put into it three quarters of a ſpoonful of Syrrup of Horehound into each Ball, and cloſe up the Ball cloſe that the Syrrup may not come out : Make your Balls no bigger than a Barbers Waſh-ball, or but a little bigger if you do ; for it is not good to give Balls too

big: then warm a pint and a half of strong Beer luke-warm, and fill the Horn with Beer, and before you put it in, put in one of the Balls, having pull'd out his tongue with your left hand before. When his tongue is out, put the Balls into his mouth as far as you can, then hasten two Hornfulls of Beer to wash it down; do the like with the next Ball as you did with the first: then take his back, and ride him for three or four miles a hand-gallop, till he sweat well, for this reason: Because the Diseases in this Receipt, as they come with a heat, so the speediest and best remedy is to drive them away with a heat. The second reason is, That a Drink will take no more place in a Horse for heats and colds, than to give a Horse a Drink, and walk him about the Yard. Therefore for Diseases of this nature, ride him till he sweat soundly: a mile before you come at home, ride him but a foot-pace, that he may be set up something cool; then tye him up to the Rack, cover him with two Cloths, stuff him and litter him very warm, cover his head and body to keep him from the cold; let him stand four or five hours before he eat or drink; then when you unbit him, give him a Mash, or some water luke-warm, or some clean Hay, and take off one Cloth, and keep him warm. If this will not do, a week after give him the same again; and give him warm water but two days after it, and then cold water; a week before your Horse goes to grass, give it three or four times a year, and it will keep your Horse in gallant health; it will fat a Horse; It will make him sick, but fear nothing: But if you give your Horse too much at a time, that it makes him extraordinary sick, give him a pint of Milk as it comes from the Cow, or heat the Milk lukewarm. Proved many times. *This is a rare Receipt.*

**LXXXV.** *To cure the Kernels under the Horses throat, cheaply and suddenly.*

**F**irst, Sear the Kernels with a Candle ; then take of fresh or salt Butter, and lay a piece upon a red piece of cloth, and rub it well in, and in a fortnights time the Knot will be quite gone : and if his Nose run, it will stop when the Kernels are gone ; anoint the Knots once a day for a week in the time of his Cure. If it be in Summer, let him run out, and in Winter stand in. *Proved.*

**LXXXVI.** *For a Cough of the Lungs.*

**T**O know this, the Horse will cough hollowly and gruntingly, he will hang down his head when he coughs ; his flanks will beat, he will fetch his breath short. For remedy, let him stand in the night before ; the next day in the Morning fasting, give him a spoonful of the Syrrup of Horehound, and a spoonful of the Flour of Brimstone , and put these into a pint and a half of strong Beer heated lukewarw, and give it him fasting : take him and ride him three or four miles presently upon it, till he sweat well : ride but a foot-pace within a mile of home ; be careful to set him up warm : Litter and clothe him warm : Let him stand in not above two or three nights, if it be in Summer ; after that turn him out from ten a Clock to three a Clock, for two or three days, and then turn him out for altogether : the more moderately you work him, the better he will thrive : It will take away his Cough, clear his Pipes, and make him thrive much after it. If there be a white, thick, claiely water near, let him drink there,

there, it is a warmer and more fattening water than any other; give warm water not above twice: this drink will clear his Pipes, and drive it from his Lungs: You may put in as much of the Powder of Macoachan, as will lie upon a shilling at three times.

*Proved.*

LXXXVII. *For a broken-winded Horse.*

**T**AKE Boars-dung and dry it to powder, and put a spoonful of it into two pints of milk as it comes from the Cow, or otherwise heated luke-warm, and give it him. If you see that this proportion will not make him sick the first time you give it, then give him two spoonfuls more of the powder, and in four or five times giving, it will perfectly cure. This Drink must be given every third day. A spoonful of the powder of a Hedg-hog (by some called an Urchin) doth infinitely help in this case. *Proved.*

LXXXVIII. *For a Cold in a Beast, either in Winter or summer.*

**T**AKE an Egg-shell full of Tar, half an ounce of Red-stone Sugar, half an ounce of Anniseeds beaten small, half an ounce of Tobacco beaten, half an ounce of Liquorish beaten very small, two ounces of Brimstone beaten small, a quarter of a handful of Herb-Grace cut small; after that these things are thus beaten and stirred up together, make them up into three Balls of a like bigness, then put two pints of strong Beer luke-warm; and the first hornful of Beer that you give him, put a Ball into in; and do so likewise to the second and third: and then give him the remainder of the Beer. Let him not drink

for

for four or five hours after : give him a Mash, and afterwards Hay to eat ; Let him stand in for three or four nights if it be in Summer, after the first days giving ; work him every day moderately, and the Beast will thrive the better. If once will not take away his Cough, and cause him to belly, give him another ; keep him warm, and it is a Cure. *Proved.*

LXXXIX. *For the Scratches.*

**T**hey are upon the after-heels of a Horse in the Pastern and above. For remedy, take two penny-worth of black Soap, as much as an Egg of the newest Hens-dung as you can get, Oyfter-shells put into hot Embers five or six ; they must be put in over night, and raked up so, that they may be well dried by the Morning ; then beat them to powder, and bray them all together like an Oyntment, and apply it to the Horses sore heels every Morning and Evening ; the Horse must not come into the water till you see he is cured : Always rub his heels very clean before you rub in the Oyntment, and you shall find it a certain Cure in two or three times dressing.

XC. *For the Scratches.*

**O**ver night let his heels and legs be bathed well in Beef-broth ; the next Morning rub his legs clean, and then apply this Oyntment to heal it. Take two penny-worth of Gilts-grease, two penny-worth of Speck-Oyl at the Curriers, made of shreds and cuttings of Leather, two penny-worth of Verdigrease beaten small, two penny-worth of Train-Oyl : put all these into a Pipkin, and set it on the Coals to melt, but stir them till they be melted ; then once a day



day anoint him with this Oynment, till his Heels be well, which will be whole very suddenly : Chafe it, and rub it in with your hand very well, let him come in no water nor dirt till he be whole : When Horses have been so swelled, crannied and stiff, that they could not go, but fall down, this hath cured them.

*Proved.*

*XCI. Another for the same.*

**I**F at any time a Horses Leg swell, but especially in the Month of *March*, ride him into a River where the water runs swift, up to the mid-leg, and there let him stand not above a quarter of an hour ; then when you set him up in the Stable, take a wisp and a payl of water, and dash the water against his Legs, till they be clean. This is a Cure for swelled Legs in a very short time, that is, when they are not broken out, but onely swelled.

*Proved.*

*XCII. For foot-ffoundering.*

**T**Hat foot which is foundred, he will set before the other. For remedy, pare him down to the quick, if he bleed it matters not ; then set on his Shooe very hollow ; then take Flax or Tow, and make a pretty thick Cake thereof, and spread Venice-Turpentine thereon a good thickness ; then lay it all over the bottom of the Hoof, and put a piece of the upper-leather of a shooe to keep it in ; at three days end, lay on a new Plaister as before. If his Foot grow again, pare him to the quick again, and every third day lay on a new Plaister, till you see him go better : he must run abroad in low grounds ; this Plaister will draw down the humours exceedingly.

ingly. Continue thus doing, and if he have not been foundered too long, this will cure him in a month or very little more, perfectly. To further the cure, you may let him bleed at the Toes; nevertheless the place should not be dirty that he goes in.

*Proved.*

**XCIII.** *For the Garget in the throat of a Cow.*

**I**F you have an Ox, or Cow, or Bullock, that hath the Garget in the Throat, it comes for want of Water; it will cause a swelling under the sides. The remedy is, first to cast the Beast, then cut the skin through in the midst of the swelling, and flea the skin from the flesh so far as any swelling goes: then take of the whitest Wood-ashes that you can get, sifted fine; mix them with some mouldy, stale, old Piss; stir them well together, and wash the sore therewith.

*Proved.*

**XCIV.** *Another for a Garget at the root of the Tongue of a Cow.*

**A** Garget at the root of the Tongue, is a certain swelling under the root of the Tongue, which causeth his head and face to swell also, and to frothe at the mouth; he will then forsake his meat, with often gulping in his throat. The remedy is, first, cast him in soft straw, from bruising his body; then take his Tongue in your hand and pull it out as far as you can, and with the point of a sharp Pen-knife slit down the middle Vein an inch, right under the Tongue, and there will come forth black blood, and water which comes from the Gall; then rub the place with

with Salt and Vinegar mingled together, and it will cure.

*Proved.*

**XCV.** *For the Garget in the Guts of a Cow or Bullock.*

**T**He signs are these : The Beast will run at the eyes, drivel and flaver at the mouth, with a sad heavy countenance. For remedy, take an Egg shell full of Tar, and put it down her Throat ; then take two handfuls of Salt, and put it into a pint of Verjuyce, and put it down the Beasts Throat with a Horn, then drive her to and fro till she dung : Keep her fasting four houres after.

*Proved.*

**XCVI.** *For the over-flowing of the Gall, in a Cow or Bullock.*

**T**He signs are, extraordinary foulness of the Body, and flavering at the mouth. The remedy, Take an Egg-shell full of Tar, and put it down her Throat, having before a pint of Verjuyce of Vinegar, and a penny-worth of Cloves beaten ; boyl the Verjuyce and Cloves together, and when you take it off the fire, put in two good handfuls of Salt, and give it her luke-warm with a Horn, immediately after the Egg-shell full of Tar, and drive her to and fro.

*Proved.*

**XCVII.** *For a Horse or Cow that makes red Water.*

**T**Ake a Red-Herring with a hard Row, and cut it as small as you can, and put it into a quart of strong Beer, and give the Bealt it luke-warm, and in twice giving it is a cure.

*Proved.*

**XCVIII.**

**XCVIII.** *For a Horse that is Back-swankt, or for a Strain in the Kidneys, being over-burthened in the binder part, or in Race-running, or by being over-strained in the Back.*

**T**AKE a fat hot Sheeps-skin, just as it comes from the back of the Sheep as soon as she is kill'd; mix four penny-worth of Nerve-Oyl, and four penny-worth of Turpentine well together, and besmear or anoint the inside of the Sheeps skin all over, and clap it to the place of the back where the grief lies, which commonly is in the Navel-place of the Back-bone: In that part of the Back-bone, is a Horse mostily swankt of. When you have thus laid it along his Back-bone, make a Crupper to go under his Tail to keep it on, and a Brest-plate before, and fasten them together, to girt it upon him for a month till his back be knit and strengthened. *Proved.*

*Here*

*Here follow Nathanael Shaw's Receipts, which are all approved things : And he is accounted as able a Farrier as any is in London. I have both proved my self, and seen him prove most of them, both inward and outward ; and although the former Receipts in this Book will do much good, yet these go beyond them in many things, both for cheapness and readiness of the Cure. I shall begin with a Disease in the Head, called the Canker.*

*C. For a Canker in the Head.*

**A** Canker is a Disease in the head, and sometimes will set upon the eyes, and sometimes in the nostrils : you shall know it by his rawness, and it will run a yellow water. For remedy, take half a pint of Sallet-oyl, one ounce of the Oyl of Turpentine, three ounces of Burgundy-Pitch, and one penny-worth of Verdigrease beaten fine ; put all but the Verdigrease into a Pipkin, and let them boyl together a pretty while : then take it off the fire, and put in the Verdigrease, and let them all boyl together to a salve ; but if you have not a great care, the Verdigrease will make all boyl over ; to prevent which, always have another Pipkin stand by in readiness, that if it boyl over you may put some into that ; then put them together again, and let them upon warm embers, and let it gently boyl till you see it come to a Salve, being neither too hard nor too soft ; you must stir it all the while it boyls, then take it off, and keep it for your use : If you use this Medicine for a Canker in the Nostrils, first tye a rag about a sticks end, and dip it in some White-wine-vinegar and some Salt,

Salt, and run it up his Nostrils to do off all the scales : When you have washt it clean, take a feather, and if it be not long enough tye two together, and dip it in the cold Salve, and run it up his Nostrils but once a day : If it be a Canker in the head, face, or eyes, take a little Tow, and rub the Canker till it bleed, and when it leaveth bleeding, anoint it with a feather dipt in the aforesaid Salve, and strew some Wheat-bran upon the Salve, it will hold on the better : Dress it once a day till you see it heal, and then once in two or three days, whilst it heals up. Observe this Rule in all outward cures, for it is needful : let him stand in all the time of the Cure.

*Proved.*

*CI. For a dry scurvy Mange, although it be from the Head to the Tail, of Horse, Cow, Dog, or any thing else.*

**F**irst, scrape off all the Scurf with an old Curry-comb or piece of knife ; then take two ounces of the Oyl of Turpentine, and as much strong Beer : mix them together, and shake them well in a Glass-vial ; then anoint the Horse where he is pild and mangy : a week after, dress him again if you see any mattery running places, else not : tye him up with a strong halter, till it hath done working, for it will smart terribly : When you have killed the Mange, to make the hair come again, wash it two or three times with a little strong Beer now and then, and it will make the hair come quickly and thick. Let the Beast stand in at dry meat the time of the Cure. This is a rare Receipt.

*Proved.*



CII. For a blow or any other mischance, which causeth a swelling about the head, face, jaws or chops.

**F**irst, let blood in the Neck-vein, on the side the head swells; if he swells on both sides, let him blood on both sides: Then give him this Drink to prevent a Farty; take an ounce of Turmeric, and an ounce of Anniseeds, of Red-sage, Wormwood, Herb-grace, of all three but a handful; cut them small, and put all into a quart of strong Beer, and give it the Beast cold, for they are hot of themselves, fasting in a morning, and let him fast four or five hours after it; give him warm water to drink but for once: so soon as you have given him his Drink, apply this Charge hot with a flat stick, dab on the Swelling a quarter of a pint of *Aqua vite* or Brandy-wine, which is the Spirit of *Aqua vite*, but Brandy is best, mixed with a penny-worth of Crown-Soap, according to the bigness or smallness of the swelling; make a quantity of these two things which you apply as a Charge; this charge of these two things, will take down any swelling old or new whatsoever. Soke it in with a red-hot Iron; apply it but once, it will not come off in fourteen or fifteen days; it will sink it quite flat, or break it. *Proved.*

CIII. For a Navel-Gall.

**T**Ake Brandy-wine cold, and dab it on with your hand, or with a rag, it will take it down in a few times dressing, if the skin be not broken.

*Proved.*

CIV.

CIV. For hard Kernels under the Throat.

**M**ix Soap and Brandy-wine together, and apply it to the Kernels hot: then heat it in with a hot Iron; it will either sink them flat, or break them.

*Proved.*

CV For a new Sinew-strain.

**A**pply Soap and Brandy once hot, and heat them in with a hot Iron; but first you must clip the hair away in the Pastern right over the Shackle-veins, and then let blood on both the Shackle-veins, and then apply the Charge; letting blood will much further the Cure. Let the Sinew-strain be before or behind; you must let blood if you will have a speedy Cure. Letting blood thus, and applying the Charge, will take his lameness away in eight and forty hours, with once doing at the most. Do not ride him in four or five days after you have laid on this charge. This Soap and Brandy heat well in with a hot Iron, it will not come off in fourteen or fifteen days; and when you see the scurf to rise, anoint it with Trotters Oyl, which is made of Sheeps feet boyled: anoint it once in two days, to strengthen the Sinews, till he go well; you may ride him in four or five days, and for four or five days, or a week, keep him out of the water, after you have applied the Charge, and it will be a perfect Cure.

*Proved.*

CVI. *For an old Sinew-strain that is swelled and hard on fore or after-legs.*

**F**irst, clip away the hair right over the Shackle-veins on the Pastern, and you will see to strike the Shackle-vein the better : when it hath bled, apply two ounces of the Oyl of Turpentine, mixed with two ounces of strong Beer, and put them into a Glas-vial, and shake them well together : bathe most of it in with your hand upon the Vein or swelling, and three or four days after it hath done swelling, and begins to be scurfie, lay a Charge of Soap and Brandy ; heat it well in with a hot Iron, and it will take it quite down in a week or a fortnights time, you may ride him in five or six days : When you see the Charge to scurf and pill, you may anoint it with Oyl of Trotters once or twice.

*Proved very certain.*

CVII. *For any old, hard, and crusty Knobs, or swellings, that have been a long time, let them be never so hard. Do thus :*

**F**irst, anoint it with an ounce and a half of the Oyl of Turpentine, and as much strong Beer mixed together, and put it in a Glas, and well shaken together, and bathed in with your hand ; and three or four days after, the charge of Sope and Brandy, applied and well heated in with a hot Iron ; and four or five days after, you may ride him where you please, it will take it quite down.

*Proved.*

CVIII.

CVIII. *For old broken Knees much swelled and hard, that have been long healed up.*

First, mix an ounce and a half of the Oyl of Turpentine, and the like quantity of strong Beer, shaking them in a Glass together; then bathe it in with your hand upon the swelled Knee: two or three days after, apply the charge of Crown-Soap and Brandy hot, and let it lye on till it come off of its own accord; it will much lessen, if it do not take it quite down; let him stand in: The Oyl of Worms is a great mollifier of a hard and bony part, and hard swellings.

*Proved.*

CIX. *For a Strain in the Pastern, Back, or Sinews.*

A Charge of Crown-Soap and Brandy-wine applied hot, and heated well in with a hot Iron, is marvellous good; keep him out of the water for a week after, till you see him go well. This Soap and Brandy-wine is an absolute cure for a Strain newly taken, or new swelling, or soft swelling; but if it be old done, and the swelling as hard as a bone, then you must first anoint it with the Oyl of Turpentine and Beer, and two or three days after apply the charge of Soap and Brandy, and it will take it quite down.

*Proved.*

CX. *How to boyl the Charge of Soap and Brandy to a Salve.*

This Soap and Brandy, when you are to boyl them, let them boyl till they come to a white Salve, then lay it on hot with a flat stick, always when you

dress a Beast, this is how to boyl it, and make the Charge: It will make a Horse swell much, but within three or four dayes after it hath taken its course, it will fall as flat as may be. For all these lamenesses, the Beast must stand in for four or five days; you need not take above a quarter of a pint of Brandy, and a penny-worth of Crown-sope. For a Horse that is cast in a Ditch, and is much swelled and bruised about the Head and Body with beating of himself: Let Blood in this case, first in those Veins where you see most cause, and let him bleed as discretion shall teach you, and then apply the Charge of Crown-sope and Brandy-wine hot all over the swelling with a flat stick, and heat it well in with a hot Iron, and let him stand in the house the time of his cure, and you shall find it to be a very perfect and ready cure.

*Proved.*

*CXI. For a swelling that comes by reason of wind or cold getting into the Wound; how to take it away, whether it be in the Head or any part of the Body.*

**I**F the swelling in the Head cause a thick Film over the Eyes, then follow the directions under-written: If the swelling comes by reason of wind or cold getting into the wound, to take out the heat and rankness of the Swelling, you must anoint it all over with an ounce of the Oyntment of Populeon, or more if the swelling be great; anoint it twice a day at first, and as it falls, fewer times will serve; in the mean time do nothing to the wound, till the Swelling be almost gone: when the Swelling is almost gone or down, wash the wound with Chamber-lye and Salt, or Vinegar and Salt, and heal it up with your healing Salves. If he get a wound in his face

or

or head, and the wind get in and cause it to swell, when you have taken away the swelling by anointing it with this Populeon, it may be you shall see your Beast to have lost his sight, by reason of some thick Film that hath covered his Eyes. For remedy, when you have first taken down the swelling, do thus: Slit a little hole upon the bone of the cheek with a sharp-pointed Pen-knife, and then put in your Cornet-horn, and work up the point thereof between the skin and the flesh, close up to the Eye: then take a little bit of new Canvass, and cut it three-square, and roul it up round the length of your Thumb; mix some Salt and fresh Butter together, and strow some Salt upon the Butter, although the Butter be Salt, and spread it on both sides the Canvass; then roul it up round, and thrust it up into the hole, and there let it be: over it lay a little piece of Canvass, with some Burgundy-Pitch spread upon it, to keep out the cold and wind, and it will draw and drain the Eye very clean and clear. This being done, put a little piece of fresh Butter, with a corn or two of Salt into the Eye; and put in a piece of Butter into the hollow hole above the Eye: anoint and rub it well in, that it may drain down the Eye. For a blow with a Cudgel, Whip, Stick, or a Haw in the Eye, though you think the Horses Eye would go out, this course taken, will remedy it in a short time.

Let Blood in the Temple-vein for a hot rheum; and likewise when a Horses Eye-sight fails with hard riding or much straining; nevertheless, you must strike the same cross the Vein, and then the rheum will stop, and the Vein will knit up of it self; this is a main means to stop a hot rheum that comes down to a Horses Eye: when you let a Horse blood on this Vein at any time, you must cord him about the



Neck, and when he hath bled as much as you think good, to keep the cold and wind out of the Vein, you should do well to Pitch and flock it: for a hot rheum, hard riding, or over-much straining, give this drink fasting, to clear the Stomach, and cleanse the Blood and Lights (*viz.*) one ounce of Turmerick, half a quarter of *Aqua vite* or Brandy, two or three spoonfuls of White-wine-vinegar, a quart of the best Beer, give it luke-warm: but if there be a kind of white glasse in his sight, then it can be no cure.

Likewise, if you have a young Horse that you think will be Moon-blind, then you must take up the Temple-vein in the wane of the Moon, doing with your Cornet-horn as before you were taught, and put a piece of Butter in his Eye, and a piece in the hole of his Eye: If it be a hot rheum, his Eye will water and look red below the Eye, let him come into the cold wind as little as you can: If it be a Film, if it be thick, white, blue, though it hath been for half a year, then do as ye were just directed in this Receipt, and no otherwise.

*Proved.*

**CXII.** *For a hot Inflammation or soft swelling, that is new done, whether broken or not broken.*

**A** Noint it with the Oyl of Populeon, and rub it in cold with your hand once a day, or twice at the most, till it be down.

*Proved.*

**CXIII.** *For a Bruise or Bite upon the Cods of an Horse, that cause them to swell much.*

**F**irst, Bathe them well in warm Whey or Milk, but Whey is best, let it be as hot as the Horse can endure it: bath it for three or four days together; then

then make a Bag to put his Cods therein to keep them warm, anoint his Cods with the Oyl of Populeon cold, once or twice a day, till you see the swelling of his Cods abate ; which when you see, apply the Charge of Crown-fope and Brandy-wine, to take down the rest of the swelling, and to knit the Veins and strings of his Cods again : Lay it on hot, and heat it well in, three or four days after ride him into a River, if you can, or Pit, up to the belly, and you shall see it fall in a short time. If the Cods be swell'd much, and it have been long done, and is hard, then do not meddle with it. *Proved.*

**CXIV.** *To keep in your Medicine, and keep out the wind.*

**O**Ver your Medicine, lay a Plaister of Burgundy-Pitch, and it will keep in your Medicine and keep out the wind, whilst you take down the swelling with the Oyl of Populeon ; but *Culpepper* saith that the Oyntment of Populeon is better.

**CXV.** *Directions.*

**I**F at any time a Horse come to you with swelled Legs, and that hath been poysoned with other Farriers Medicines : First, before you apply any thing of your own to it, bath his Leg or Legs with Whey as hot as he can endure it, to wash off the Poyson of their Medicines, and to make his Legs clean. Whey will not take off the hair if it be not off before, it will cool gallantly, it is better than Milk : But if you cannot get Whey, then take Milk ; after you have thus bathed it in warm Whey or Milk, you may fall to work according to your judgment, as it is in hardness or softness : This Book will

tell you, whether you shall take it away by Drinks or Oyntments, or by both: Look the Receipts for a dry Surfeit, and the Receipt for a Pocky Farcion Horse: Look the following Receipts for a dry Surfeit, and there you shall see the purge of Aloes to be given inwardly, and other things to be applied outwardly to the hard swelling: If it be a surfeit that comes down out of the body, and falls into the Legs before or behind, and breaks, and runs moist, watry or attery, stinking filthy matter, then look the following Receipts for a foul, rank, Pocky Farcyon Horse, and give him the first Drink there mentioned at the beginning of the Receipt; one or two of those drinks will dry up the moist humours that fall out of his Body into his legs. *Note*, That where the filth breaks out of the Chaps, if the Crannies be very great, and if you see that the filthy matter that comes out of those Crannies is like to rot the Sinews of the legs, then use the following Receipt, which is for Pains and Scratches, made of Honey, Pepper, and Garlick. The Drink given inwardly, and this Receipt applied outwardly to the Crannies of his legs, are incomparable: for the drink at once or twice giving, will dry up the humours in his body, although never so many or so violent, and the Salve will heal up his Legs suddenly and to purpose. This is enough to direct you, especially for dry Surfeits that fall out of the body into the Legs, and there settle and become very hard: And likewise for surfeits that fall out of his Body, and break, stink, and run, watry, yellow, thick, and sometimes thin matterly filth in the Legs: if after you have made a Cure of these, and see your Horse gaunt, and doth not fill well, then give him the Purge of Aloes to scour and cleanse him; and after that your Cordial, White-wine, and Honey,

Honey, all mentioned in the following Receipts in this book, which is for a dry Surfeit. And when a Horses cods are subject to swell oft, give him this Purge of Aloes that is for a dry Surfeit, which is when the Grease is melted, and afterwards settled and dried in his body. It is good for a Horse that is gaunt and will not fill, and we say is gut-foundred, and his hair stands right up. The Cordial of White-wine and Honey is marvellous good to beget and continue a stomach to his meat, being given after his Purge; as you are fully directed in the Receipt for a Horse that is swelled in his Cods, and that hath a dry Surfeit, and runs at the nose. I say, in the following Receipts you shall there find them all together in order.

CXVI. *For a Shoulder-strain.*

**F**irst, tye up his sound leg very sure with a Liff or Garget, then walk or drive him on three legs, that he may lay the weight of his body upon the lame leg, till he begin to sweat at the ears and cods with pain; this is, because you may see the Plait-vein the plainer appear; then let down his lame leg, and you shall see the vein yet plainer than you could when his leg was tied up: If you cannot see the vein plain enough when his leg stands upon the ground, then heat but a little water, and clap it on with your hand upon the vein, and then you shall certainly see the vein appear a great deal bigger, that you may let it blood: then when you see the blood is come into the Plait-vein, and that the vein is plain enough to see and feel, tie up his lame leg again, and let him bleed in the Plait-vein, on that side the bottom of his Chest his lame leg is on: let him bleed a quart

or two, or more ; the greater the lameness is, the more let him bleed : after he hath bled about a quart upon the ground, presently put into a bowl a good handful of Salt, and let him bleed a quart or more into that Salt : you must stir the Salt and blood all together, all the while he bleeds into the bowl, because it may not clot ; then set the Blood and Salt by, and stop the Plait-vein with a piece of Lead, that may nip the mouth of the vein together again that it may not bleed : You must have in a readiness an ounce, or an ounce and a half of the Oyl of Turpentine, and as much strong Beer ; put them both into a Glass-vial, and shake them well together : When you have thus shaken the Oyl and Beer together, bathe it well in with your hand about his breast, and all his shoulder over, and the bottom of his breast, between his legs, and half way down to his knees ; bathe it and clap it well in with your hand ; presently after, take the blood and Salt, and bathe and clap that upon the former ; then set him up into the Stable to meat, and with a Lift or Garter, tie both his fore-legs together as close as you can, a Girt or Surcingle will serve to tie his legs. The next day untie his fore-legs, take him out and walk him, and if you see he go any thing well, take his back and ride him gently a Mile, and set him up again, and tie his fore-feet again, as close as you did before : If he go not well the first day, do but walk him the second day, & not ride him ; and the third day after his first dressing, do not onely tie his legs, but flat a stick on both sides in the fashion of a wedge, about the breadth of a six-pence ; take it and drive it in between the toes of his shooes, and the toe of his foot fast, so that it may not come out, and always whilst he stands still in the Stable, tie his legs close, and peg him

him with a wedge ; and when you walk or ride him abroad, untie his legs and take out the wedge : do this every night and day till he grow sound, which will be within two or three days, if it be a Strain newly taken : To let blood once, and anoint it once with the Oyl of Turpentine and Beer, and once with the blood and Salt, is enough, with the help of tying his legs together, and driving in a wooden wedge, as you were before directed. For a wrench in the shoulder, or when a Horse hath pulled his shoulder out of his place, and the shoulder is fallen the breadth of a mans hand or more, or if he be splayed on the shoulder, do nothing contrary to what you were directed before in this Receipt, either for matter or manner ; for if it be but lately done, it is as speedy a Cure for the one as for the other. And if you do as you are here directed, I am perswaded there is not a better or speedier way to be taken under the Sun. I cannot give praises sufficient to the worth of it.

*Proved in all.*

**CXVII.** *For an old Strain in the Shoulder.*

**T**He fore-going direction in the last Receipt, is most incomparably certain, for an old hurt in the shoulder, and is for this as absolute a cure in one weeks time as any is under the Sun.

*Proved.*

**CXVIII.** *For the Hurle-bone out of Joynt, or a little miscarried,*

**T**His Hurle-bone is much about the midst of the Buttock, and is very apt to go out of the socket with a slip or strain. The Oyl of Turpentine and Beer is marvellous good, used as you were before directed,



rected, for a Horse that has gotten a mischance in the Hurle-bone : After you have shaken them together in the Glass, take of it, and as near as you can, pour a little of it right over the socket of the Hurle-bone, the breadth of the palm of your hand, and rub it in with your hand. It will make the skin to purse up and be very sore, and you must anoint him on the brawn and thick part of the inside of the thigh, and so down to the stiffl, and anoint him down to the very —.

In the time of the Cure, drive in a wooden wedge in the contrary foot between the toe and the shooe, and so let him stand day and night : If you see your Horse mend and go better, you may then ride him every day, so as when you set him into the Stable, you peg him with a wooden wedge : this course being taken, will in a very few days cure him, and make him go compleat.

*Proved.*

CXIX. *For a stiffl in the stiffling-bone.*

**I**F your Horse be stifled, that you see the stiffling-bone is out of his place : Then first, swim him in a Mill-pool for half an hour, till he sweat behind his ears, in which time or before, the bone will be in his place again : then lead him gently home clothed, and keep him in the Stable warm ; as soon as he comes into the Stable, peg him on the contrary foot behind, all the time of his cure whilst he stands still in the house ; and as soon as he is dry, take Soap and Brandy, mentioned in the fore-going Receipts, and lay it hot to the grieved place, and heat it well in with a hot Iron : it will swell a little at first, but it will soon fall ; it will strengthen the grieved place much, and in a short time it will be a perfect Cure.

Or

Or thus : you may for a stifle after swimming, peg him as soon as he comes into the Stable, and so do always when he stands in the house; and when he is dry, rub in half an ounce of the Oyl of Turpentine, and as much strong Beer shaken together in a Glass. It will cause it to swell something more than Soap and Brandy, but it is admirable for a stifle, and a speedy Cure. Observe, that swimming is not good for any strain, but onely to bring a stifle-bone right into the place again; and you may try it for that, but not for a Strain. The Beast must stand in the House all the time of his Cure. *Proved.*

**CXX.** *A speedy Cure for a Sinew-strain old or new.*

**F**irst, let blood in the Shackle-veins, which are in the Pastern, for it will much further the Cure; then take the fattest Cat you can get, kill her, and fley her as soon as you can possible; then bruise the flesh and bones of the Cat small, and lay it upon a cloth, and bind it close to the Sinew-strain, from the Pastern up the legs, as far as it will go, and as warm as you can: you must take out her Guts before you bruise her flesh, or lay it to; and you must, after you have let blood in the Shackle-vein, bathe the Sinew-strain with *Aqua vite*, and rub it in cold with your hand, and then afterwards lay the flesh of the Cat on a cloth to the place: Of all cures for a Sinew-strain, this is the best and speediest; wind a cloth two or three times about the leg, when you have laid the Cat on, to bind it on, because a Cat draws and knits mightily. Let him not come into the water till he be cured. *Proved.*

CXXI. *For a Poll-Evil in the Head of an Horse.*

**I**F you take it at the first swelling, then do thus: Take half an Ounce of the Oyl of Turpentine, and anoint the swelling therewith, so far as it is swelled, and let it sink in and take its course for four or five days, in which time the skin will be shrunk up like a Purse: at the four or five days end, if you see the swelling begin to fall, then take Burgundy-Pitch, and Black Pitch of each two ounces, and one ounce of Mastick, put them into a Pipkin and melt them; then take a flat stick and spread it all over the swelling; then take the shearings of cloth or flocks, and do them thick on with your hand upon the Pitch till it be hot: when your Plaister comes off, which it may be will be a Fortnight or a Month, if then you see the Oyl and the Plaister have killed the venome of it, and taken down the swelling, then do no more to it. Again, if you see when your Plaister comes off, that it is much swelled, or that there be proud flesh in it, then if it be not broken, lance it, and if there be any dead or proud flesh in it cut it out, then fill the hole or wound with fine Tow, Flax, or Hards, to dry the Blood up, and there let it lye five or six hours, then take it away, and put in some of the Medicine which you use for a Canker in the Head, Face, Eyes, or Nostrils of a Horse, *vide* Receipt C. With this Medicine dress it once a day at first, and as it begins to heal, dress it once in two days; this Medicine will heal it suddenly; cut a hole at the edge or lower part of the swelling, to lay it a draining, and it will heal a great deal sooner: dab and throw on good store of Wheat-bran upon it when you lay it on; when your Plaister comes off, look upon the top of the Poll-Evil;

Evil, to see how far the dead, proud, white, jelly flesh goes; cut it all out with your Incision-knife, till you come at the red flesh which is sound: the Veins will bleed much, and spin again when you come at the quick; but let not that hinder you from cutting out all the dead, proud flesh, which if you cut all out clean, you cannot do amiss, onely take heed you do not cut the white Pax-wax, which runs along the top of the Neck, which some call a Cress; it is white, and you may easily see it; if you cut that, his Neck will fall, and look basely, therefore have a care. There is a white Pith in a Poll-Evil near the top of the neck by the Pax-wax, take your Nippers and pull it out, it will come out like a plug; there is no such thing in a Fistula: when you have pulled it out, put some of your Medicine to it, and it will heal it apace: Let not the dead flesh be left in the wound, but cut it clean out, although the wound seem never so broad: The same cure and the same way is to be used for a Fistula; the Beast must stand in the time of the cure.

*Proved.*

**CXXII.** *For a through Splent on both sides of the Leg, by some called a Great Bone-Scrupin.*

**F**irst, Tye the Horses head close to a strong Post, then tye up his contrary leg, then bruise and beat the Splint on both sides with a Blood-stick, or Bed-staff, beat it till it be something soft: if he will not endure the beating of it standing, cast him with a Rope; after you have beat it soft, take of the Oyl of Riggum 12 penny-worth, and rub it on with your fingers on both sides, upon the very splent and no where else; you shall have of this Oyl but a little for a shilling. Tye up his head for two or three hours,

hours, for it will smart, and tye up his contrary leg. This way will take off the Hair a little, but it will grow again of the same colour presently: If it be never so big, do but thus two or three times, and within a Weeks time it will be quite faine; one dressing will serve for a small splent, or for a blood splent. This way will a little break the hair, but not the skin. If you will, you may turn him out. Proved to be admirable.

#### CXXIII. For a Maltender.

**F**irst, Clip away the hair which grows upon it, then about it; then rub the Scabs off with a Hair-cloth, or the back of your Scissors or Knife; this rubbing of it will cause it to run a yellow matter: take a Linnen-cloth, and wipe away the filth clean; then take four penny-worth of the Oyl of Riggerum, and mix it with a little of your own dung, and lay it on with a flat stick upon a Linnen-cloth, and bind it to for a week: then make it clean, and dress it again, and it is a cure. After your first dressing, you may ride him or turn him out. Proved.

#### CXXIV. For a Loosness in the Body of any Beast.

**T**AKE a pint of Red-wine, or for want thereof a pint of Claret; warm it in a Wine-pot upon the fire, then put an ounce of beaten Cinamon therein, and give it him a little warm: you may put there to the yolks of two new-laid Eggs; once or twice is a cure: give him warm water at night, and cold water next day, and ride him upon it. Proved.

#### CXXV.

**CXXV.** *For a Cold in Summer, or when a Horse doth not fill.*

**B**Oyl a quarter of Red-stone Sugar in a pint of Sack, till it be dissolved, and then take it off the fire, and put in two spoonfuls of Sallet-Oyl, and give it luke-warm : ride hard when you have given it unto him : Give him warm water for three or four days after ; keep him warm, give him now and then a Mash.

*Proved:*

**CXXVI.** *For a sudden great heat, as in Hunting, Racing, or hard Riding, that the Horses Grease is melted.*

**T**His you shall know by the panting of the Horse that night he comes in so hot : for if he be over-ridden and his Grease melted, you shall know it by the panting at the breast and Girting-place, and heaving at the flank : you shall see the night he comes in, and the next day morning, that his body will be mighty hot. For remedy, Take and give this, to purge him and cleanse him, and to qualifie the heat and working of his body : Take one pint of Sack, and put to it one ounce of Diascordium, beaten small ; mix them together, and give it to the Beast at any time cold, but in the morning fasting is the best ; give him warm water for three or four days after : give him bursten Oats, boiled Barley, and Mashs made of ground Malt, keep him well littered, and clothed warm. If he forsake his meat, and you see he hath lost his stomach, to bring him to his stomach again give him two ounces of Honey, and half a pint of White-wine mixed together, and heated luke-warm : in the morning after he hath drunk cold water, you may give him it with a Horn : It will

M

make



make him piss, clear his bladder, and bring him to his stomach again. After you have given him it, ride him a mile or two gently, and set him up warm; at night ride him a mile or two again, and litter him well, and keep him warm; Thus do for three or four days, or a week; at three days end, give him the Wine and Honey as before you were directed: If you see notwithstanding all these means used, that he will not fall to his meat, and that he is bound in his belly, and dungs very small; then give him this Cordial two or three times, two or three days betwixt each Cordial giving. Take three pints of stale Beer, household brown bread, the quantity of half a penny Loaf, boyl these two well together; then take it off the fire, and put into it a quarter of a pound of Honey, and a quarter of a pound of fresh Butter: give him this Cordial luke-warm fasting, and ride him a mile or two every evening and morning, as well when you do not give it to him, as when you do; ride him fairly, and clothe and litter him up warm: this Cordial will bring him to his stomach, & cause him to be loose bodyed, and dung soft, although he be weak, and have little or no stomach: four or five hours after his Cordial, the first thing you give him, boyl him half a peck of Oats, and a pound of Fennugreek together in water till they be burst, and the water wherein these were boyled, pour it from the Oats into another Payl, and put some cold water to it, and when he drinks let him drink of this water; for the Oats and Fennugreek, throw some of them into the Manger hot, and if he be loth to eat them, then firew some Wheat-bran upon it, and it is very likely he will eat all together: This course taken in every particular, will bring your Horse to a stomach, and raise him suddenly. Look the Receipt following.

ing, for a dry Surfeit, and when the Horses Cods are swelled, and he runs at the Nose; and there you shall see the purge of Aloes. A fortnight or three weeks after he is thus melted, and that you have given him the former things, to give him this Purge of Aloes, will do the Beast a great deal of good in this case: I am confident it is good: Or give him as much of the powder of Mechoacan, as will lye upon a shilling at three or four times, that is very good in a pint of Wine, or a quart of strong Ale. *Proved.*

### CXXVII. For a Foundred Horse.

**F**irst, tye a Lint or bloud-cord hard about the Pastern, and that will keep the blood up into his leg, that it cannot come down into his foot: when you have taken out the Soal, set on his Shooe something hollow and broad, then untye the string about the Pastern, and knock the out-side of the Hoof, and the blood will come pouring out: Let him bleed well, then put a handful of Salt into the bottom of the foot, and put as many Hards, Flax, or Tow after it, as will fill the bottom of the foot: take two or three flat sticks, and lay them between the Hards and the Shooe, a piece of stiff Soal-leather will do as well; at the end of 24 hours take the Hards away, and take a handful of Nettle-tops, and a handful of Salt, and beat them together, and lay them to the bottom of the foot; and to keep them in, take Hards and Splinters, as you were directed before: at forty hours end, take the Hards away, and apply the same quantity of Nettles and Salt, mixed with as much Hogs-grease as contains to an Egg, and beat them all together in a Mortar, and lay them to the Soal of the foot, and Hards and splinters as before; with this last Medi-

cine you may dress his foot once or twice more if you see cause : after you see the Horse goes a little well, set on another Shooe, formed with a broad Web, and let it stand broad and easie ; and in ten days time the Horse will go very well and sound : when you come at your journeys end, wash his legs clean, and when his legs are dry, make a Poultis of a quarter of a pint of White-wine-Vinegar, and a quarter of a pound of Sheeps-kidney-suet cut very small : Let these two boyl a pretty while in a Skillet, and when it comes off the fire, put two or three handfuls of Wheat-bran to it, and stir them all together, and make it thick like a poultis, and lay it to the bottom of the foot ; then Hards and Splinters as before you were directed ; then spread the rest of the Poultis upon a long piece of Linnen-cloth, and lay it hot to the hair round about the top of the Hoof and the Foot-lock, and let it come under the bottom of the Hoof : lay it to as hot as you can ; let every Poultis lye on forty eight hours ; Three or four Poultisses laid to in this manner, will do the Horse much good, and cause his foot to grow and shoot out, and give him much ease, so as in a very short time he will go very sound. If an Horse be bruised in the bottom of his foot with a stone, or any other thing, this Poultis will give present ease : For a foundring, the Beast must stand in till the bottom of his foot be grown again. I hold it best to take out but one soal at a time, because if you take out both at a time, the Horse will not be able to stand : some take out Frush and all, some take out nothing but the bare soal, and leave the Frush. The way is, first cord the Pastern, then pare the soal, and then raze it round about the soal to the quick, as near the inside or the outward shell of the Hoof as you can, with a Drawing-knife ; then raise

raise the foal at the Toe; then lay hold with a pair of Pincers, and pull it quite out, but beware you break not the Veins in the foot.

*Proved.*

CXXVIII. *For a Back swanckt in the Fillet of the Loin: or for a wrench in the Back-bone, about the Navel-place: or for a Strain in the Kidneys, by being over-burkened in the Hinder-parts, or over-strained in the Kidneys in Race-running.*

**I**F you see any of these mischances to fall upon the Back or Hinder-parts of your Beast, then do thus and no otherwise, for all those mischances above-written. Take a hot Sheep-skin fleyed off a Sheep newly kill'd, apply it as hot as you can, with the fleshy side from his rump, all over to the midst of his Back-bone, if it will reach so far: Let it lye on twenty four hours, and at the end of that time, lay another hot Sheeps-skin in the same manner to it, if need require, and you see the first will not do: Let the grief be never so great, two hot skins will do it, with the help of the Drink next under-written; but if the hurt be not great, the Sheep-skin will do it alone. It will make the Horse to sweat much, it will draw out all the bruise, and strengthen the Back of the Horse exceedingly in a short time: But if your Horse be so weak that he cannot stand nor go, then take a Sack or two, and Ropes, and throw them over a Balk, and hang him for nine or ten days; when you first hang him, clap a hot Sheeps-skin to his rump and Back for twenty four hours, and at the end of the time, lay another hot Sheeps-skin to, and then no more: In the time of this cure, give him this drink, if the strain be great: If it be but small, this drink can do no hurt, but a great deal of good: Take

Polygonatum commonly called *Solomons's Seal*; you may have it at the Apothecaries, but it is dear; take ten roots of it that may weigh three ounces, Poly-podium of the Oak a quarter of a pound, two hand-fuls of Wood-betony, or for want thereof, as much Garden-betony, cut it small, and if the roots be dry, beat them to powder; if they be green cut them thin; then take a gallon of strong Beer, or somewhat more, put it into a Kettle, and put the other three things to it, and let them boyl till the Beer be boyled half away, then take them off the fire, and put into it a quarter of a pound of Butter, and a quarter of a pound of Honey, and give the Horse of this to drink three times in nine days, in the Morning fasting, and give him warm water to drink all the while, with a handtul of Bran put into it; give him of the drink a quart at a time. Buy of these roots green, dry them, and beat them small, and keep them from wind and air for your use: If you cannot get the root of *Solomons's-Seal*, make use of the other things; they may do well without, but better with it. Let him stand in in the time of the cure. To this drink you may add Penny-royal, Clary and Comfrey, they are all knitting and strengthening Herbs. *Proved.*

**CXXIX.** *For a new Wound made with a Stake, or such like thing, Stub or Fork.*

**F**irst, wash the Wound well with Butter and Vinegar melted together, then take a Clout and tie it about a sticks end, and dip it in some Linseed-oyl, and run it to the bottom of the Wound, anoint it well, and in a short time nothing but this will heal it and kill the Gangrene of it. If the wind get into the Wound, and cause it to swell, anoint it with the Oyl

Oyl of Populeon round about the swelling : Train-oil and Verdigrease melted together, will heal and skin any Wound well and quickly. *Proved*

**CXXX.** *For a Stub in the Foot or Heel : For an over-reach with the Toe of the after-foot, upon the Heel of the fore-foot ; A Tread or Cut above the Hair, or when a stone hath cut a Horses Leg.*

**F**irst, Wash the Wound with fair water, or with Water and Salt ; when the Wound is dry, take a big Onion, or two or three small ones to the bigness of a great one, a spoonful of Pepper beaten small, as much Crown-sope as the bigness of an Egg, these three things must be beaten to a Salve, and laid upon a Linnen-cloth, and laid to the Wound four and twenty hours, and at the end of that time dress it as you did before, and so continue doing every four and twenty hours till it be whole : If this quantity of Medicine be too little, make more : As you see it heal, dress it but once in two or three days. This Onion-Salve will prevent a quitter-bone, if you lay it to before it break. This Salve is good to heal and cure all these hurts. *Proved.*

**CXXXI.** *For a Horse that is prickt in the shoeing, and afterwards festred.*

**F**irst, open it well, and take out all the corruption to the very bottom, so far as the Nail did go ; then take three or four House-snails, a little Salt, as much Sope as a Walnut : beat them all together, and lay it to the place that was pricked four and twenty hours, till you see it begin to heal ; then dress it but once in two days ; and in three or four dressings it



will be whole : When you lay this Medicine to the bottom of the foot, lay some Flax, Hards, or Tow over it, and over that a piece of Leather or Splinters to keep the Hards and Medicine in : And if it break out, or be soft above the top of the Hoof, lay some of this Medicine to, and bind it on with a Linnen rag.

*Proved*

CXXXII. *For a Horse that is prickt with a long Channel-nail.*

**F**IRST, search it with your Buttris and drawing-knife, till you find where the Channel-nail went in ; open it well, and give it all the ease you can ; search it to the bottom with a little Tow at your Instruments end, then drop ten or twelve drops of the Oyl of Turpentine into the hole ; take a little Tow or fine Lint at your Instruments end, and dip it in the Oyl of Turpentine, and put it in Tent-ways ; then mix a little Crown-lope, a little Salt, and a little Pepper beaten together, lay it over the former, and Tow or Hards over it, and a piece of Leather and Splinters over it to keep it in : The Shooe must be taken off when you dress it, and after set it on again: dress it once in four and twenty hours, till it be whole. If you find after three or four times dressing, that the Horse is in great pain still, and that you fear a breaking out above the Hoof, then take out the Soal of his Foot, and apply the Medicine in order, as you were directed for a foundred Horse, in Receipt CXXVII. Do with this just as you are there directed, to make the Soal come again ; after his Foot begins to grow again, take as much Hogs-grease as an Egg, and the like quantity of Burgundy-pitch, mix them together, and lay a pretty quantity there-

of

of in the bottom of the Hoof, and lay Hards or Tow over that, and a piece of Leather or Splinters over it, as you were formerly directed. Dress it every day for three or four days: this Grease and Pitch will much nourish his Foot, and strengthen it and keep it from drying up. Let him stand in in the time of his cure, and then if you please you may turn him out abroad.

*Proved.*

CXXXIII. *For a Brittle Hoof.*

**L**ay the Poultis to the bottom and top of the Hoof and Foot, as you have directions for a Foundred Horse, in Receipt CXXVII. Lay that Poultis to, and in three or four times dressing, it will make his brittle Hoof tough and hard as you can desire. Let him stand in in the time of his cure.

*Proved.*

CXXXIV. *For an Horses Yard, foul and furr'd with  
out, so that he pisses in the Cod.*

**T**Ake some fresh Butter and White-wine-Vinegar, and melt them, then pull out his Yard, and do off the filth with your hand, and wash it with the butter and Vinegar till it be clean; squirt some of it into his Yard with a Syringe, it will much help him in this particular.

*Proved.*

CXXXV.

**CXXXV.** *When a Horse doth not thrive, and when his Coat stands staring, and doth not lye smooth : For an inward dry Surfeit, that causeth the Cods to swell, sometimes continually, and sometimes betwixt times. When the Grease is melted, and afterwards set and dried in his Body, and his Legs sometimes swelled. For an Horse that is Gaunt and will not fill, or is Gut-foundred, when he is Costive in Body and dungs small. To procure a Stomach. The following Directions are admirable good for these following Distempers.*

**F**irst, make your Purge thus : Take an ounce of fine Aloes, the best is that which shines and glitters, an ounce will cost you a shilling, beat it to powder, take a quarter of a pound of fresh butter, bray and mix these two well together, and put a handful of Wheat-bran to it, to make it stiff like a piece of Dough or Paste, then roul it up in Balls made big in the midst, and sharp at both ends, this quantity will make four or five Balls ; then hold up his Head with a Drenching-stick, and take his Tongue in your Left hand ; and put in one ball to the root of his Tongue if you can, that he may swallow it the better : put your finger under his Tongue, then give him a Hornful of strong Beer cold after it ; then give him a second Ball, and a Hornful of Beer to wash it down, and so do in like manner by all the rest ; then ride him a mile gently, and set him up warm ; let him not eat nor drink for five or six hours after it, then give him a little clean Hay at night, not before, and some warm water to drink, with some Wheat-bran put into it ; the next morning give him warm water to drink in the same manner, and ride him a Mile gently, and tye him to the Rack for an hour after

ter

ter, then you may give him cold what meat he will eat, at night warm water and Bran again; the third day in the morning after he hath done purging, give him cold water, and before you ride him after his cold water, give him two ounces of Honey, and half a pint of White-wine heated a little warm, to make him piss, and to clear his bladder, and to beget a Stomach: then ride him a Mile or two gently, and at night air him again, and so do morning and evening till he be well, litter him well, and keep him warm: If you see that after his Purge, and after you have given him the Honey and White-wine, he do not fall to his meat, but is still bound in his body, and dungs very small, then give him this Cordial fasting two or three times, and let there be two or three days betwixt each Cordial giving. It is thus made; Take three pints of stale Beer, coarse Household-Bread the quantity of half a Penny-loaf: when these two are well boyled together, take it off the fire, and put into it a quarter of a pound of Honey, and a quarter of a pound of fresh Butter; give him all these together as a Cordial luke-warm, then ride him a mile after it; and set him up warm, and tye him up to the Rack for three or four hours after it, then give him a Mash of bursten Oats or Barly, and warm water with Wheat-bran in it, till the Horse be come to his Stomach, and be loose bodied again, which in two or three times giving he will be. The foregoing Purge is admirable good for a dry Surfeit, and for a Horse that is bound in his body, and dungs small: The Cordial with White-wine and Honey, is admirable good for a Horse that is weak, and hath little Stomach, to bring him to a Stomach again: When at any time for the foregoing Diseases, you give a Mash of bursten Oats, to half a  
peck

peck boyl a quarter of a pound of Fennugreek with them, and put some of them into the Manger hot : if he be loth to eat them, because of the tast of the Fennugreek, throw some Wheat-bran over them, and he will eat them ; this is the onely way to bring your Horfe to a Stomach, and raise him suddenly. Concerning his swelled Cods, and swelled Legs, as soon as his Purge hath done working, take the charge of Sope and Brandy ; and dab it on his swelled Cods, or swelled Legs, with a flat stick as it comes boyling hot off the fire : three or four days after it hath taken its course, whilst he stands in the house, take and ride him into the River up to the Saddle-skirts, with the stream and against it, half a quarter of an hour at a time ; wash him thus once every day, or twice, till you see the swelling quite down in his Cods or Legs, which will be in very few days : once laying on the Charge is enough. If it be a dry Surfeit, give the Purge first, and afterwards the Cordial of White-wine and Honey ; But if he have a cold, and run at the Nostrils, then first give him the following drink made of Anniseeds, Turmeric, Brandy or *Aqua vite*, Vinegar and Beer, and three days after give him the Cordial ; when a Horfe is fat and lusty, and then melted, and the Grease set within him, in this case use the Purge first : But if he be fat and sick both together, then give him the White-wine and Honey, and Cordials, as you are before in this Receipt directed, to bring him to a Stomach first ; and when you have done that, then give him the Purge, and order him after it as you are there directed. If there be hard Kernels between his Jaws or Chaps at the same time, the Charge of Sope and Brandy laid hot upon them, and heated well in, in once doing  
it

it will either sink them flat, or break them: And if they break, wash them with Butter and Vinegar, and let them heal up of themselves.

*All proved to be good and certain.*

CXXXVI. *For a moist, hot, running surfeit, that falls out of his body into his Fore-legs, and sometimes into his After-legs, and sometimes into all four.*

**T**His Surfeit comes with Colds and Heats, which are divers ways taken; when it falls out of his Body into his Legs, and runs hot, moist, white, yellow, thin, thick, stinking Water or Matter, in this case, the Horses breath will stink and smell very strong, and his Legs will swell and stink extreemly; when this Surfeit breaks in his Body and falls down into his Legs, at his first going out the Stable, he will hardly draw his Legs over the Threshold, and he will be so stiff that he can hardly stir in the Stable, but will hold up his Leg to his Midribs. Although this Disease be never so violent in breaking out, or causing his Legs to swell and run, yet you need not fear remedy for him, if you observe these Directions following. First, keep him fasting all the night before, or give him but a very little meat, to keep his Jaws from falling; the next day in the morning before he drink, let him bleed on both the Neck-veins, and let him bleed well, then uncord him, and give him this drink following, which will much purge and dry up his gross humours in his Body, and cleanse his Blood: Take one ounce of Aristolochia, one ounce of Turmerick, one ounce of Anniseeds dry, and beat the Turmerick and Anniseeds small, and grate the root of Aristolochia; put all these together, with one handful of Rew, and a handful of Wormwood green or dry,



dry, and one handful of Red-Sage, one handful of green Fennel: if it be winter that you cannot get green, then take two ounces of Fennel-seeds, and beat them small, and put to the rest of the things, and put all into an earthen Pot or Pan, and put to them three pints of Running or Spring-water, and there let them lye in sleep all night: the next morning before you give it to him, ride him a Mile till he be a little warm, and give it to him cold as it stood all night, then after that ride him a Mile again, and let him stand upon the bit six or seven hours, and then give him a little Hay, and after that warm water and Bran; the next morning ride him to the River, let him drink but once a day, and ride him two or three Miles after it: At three days end give him the former drink fasting, and follow the Directions before-named in this Receipt; and so continue doing, by giving the former drink at every three days end, till you see you have dried up the gross humours in his Body, and caused them to cease running and swelling: you may work him three or four hours in a day to get him a stomach: let it be in winter or summer, keep him in the house with dry meat; when he is cured you may turn him out: Wash his Legs clean in some River up to the Hams, and keep his Legs as cool as you can all the time of the cure: One or two of these drinks given at three days distance, will dry up the humours in his Body, which feed the swellings in his Legs, Cods, or elsewhere; these drinks will make him run at the Nose white or yellow: If he fall from his meat, you may the third day after his drink give him a Cordial, as it is set down in the foregoing Receipt; and then a drink, and then a Cordial of White-wine and Honey: Now if there be great Chaps or Crannies in his

his Legs, as it is an hundred to one but there will, by reason of the extream heat and continual running of the moist fretting humour, to heal them up although never so big, yea though the Sinews were almost rotted with the filth; to prevent which, and to heal it also, take this gallant Receipt following which is for pains and Scratches, and if it were never so ill, in a short time it will heal it. The way to order the Horse and make the Salve is thus; In this case you must not ride him into the River, or Water at all, but you must first take two or three Pails of fair water and wash his Legs clean, then clip away all the hair close to the skin, so far as his Legs are Crannied or Scabby, then wash his Legs clean with another Pail of fair water, and let him stand till his Legs be dry; then take half a pound of Honey, an ounce of beaten Pepper, and ten heads of Garlick; beat them well all together in a Bowl till they come to a Salve, divide this Salve into two parts, spread the one half upon half a sheet of gray Paper, and the other half upon the other half sheet of Paper; then take a broad piece of Linnen-cloth and lay it upon the Paper, and so lay the Plaister to the Crannied place, and the cloth over it, and sew it on fast; that it may not come off: let this Plaister lye on two days; make a small Thum-band of Hay, and wind it about his Legs and over the Plaister for two days, at the end of which take all off, and take a Linnen-cloth and wipe the Chaps of every Cranny in his Legs or Heels clean, and then lay on a fresh Plaister, and do as you did before: in three or four times dressing it thus, it will be whole: He must not come into the water all the time of his cure. If you have an Horse whose Sinews are rotten, broken or cut, or much putrified, then apply  
none

none but this Medicine to it, and it will draw, cleanse, and knit them together again. It is for a Sinew in this nature, the best cure in the world. After you have thus drencht him inwardly, and cured the swelling of his Legs outwardly: If you see he look gaunt, and hath no Stomach to his meat, and do not fill and thrive well, if he be sick and weakly, give him White-wine and Honey, the Cordials mentioned in the foregoing Receipts, to bring him to his stomach again, then and not before give the Purge of Aloes: But if your Horse be gaunt, and girt up in his Body, if he be in any heart, and will eat his meat, in this case give the Purge first, and then your White-wine and Honey, and your Cordials, as you are directed in the foregoing Receipts, to bring him to his stomach: If you do as you are here directed, all along throughout the whole Receipt in every particular, you need not question but, through Gods Blessing, you shall have the desired success you look for.

*All proved.*

**CXXXVII.** *To make a Horse stale free, and constantly.*

**T**AKE half a pint of White-wine, one ounce of Ivy-berries beaten to powder, and put to the White-wine, let it lye in steep all night, then give it to the Horse next morning fasting; do not heat it all, but ride him after it a mile or two, then tie him up to the Rack, two, three or four hours after it: This is very good for the Wind-colick, and to make a Horse piss freely: do this every Morning till you see him piss free; this will cleanse the Kidneys of all sand and filth; it is very good for the Stone and Gravel. These Berries you must gather when they  
are

are black-ripe, which is about *Lent* or *Shrove-tide*: if you gather them green, or when they are full ripe, put them in a platter, and dry them in the Sun till they be fit to beat to powder, and give them as you were directed: It is as good for a Christian as for a Horse: Nettle-seeds is a great provoker of Urine; you may put a handful to the Berries and Wine.

*Proved.*

**CXXXVIII.** *To cure the Vives under the Roots of the Ears.*

**F**irst, Let him Blood on both sides of his Neck, then clap a pair of Barnacles upon his Nose, and take a red-hot Iron, with the edge as thick as the back of your Knife, and with it make a strike from the Root of the Ears upon the middle of the swelling, downwards to the lowest part of the Swelling in this manner, as this Figure directs you, three strikes from the long; burn it till the skin be yellow, and then sear it no more: when it is thus seared, anoint the swelling with a little Butter or Hogs-grease: if you anoint it once or twice, it is enough; if you sear him deep, you must anoint him the oftner.



*Proved.*

**CXXXIX.** *For the Squinsey, or Strangling, or Cold, that breaks out at the Nose, and bath run a year.*

**T**He Squinsey breeds the Canker in the Mouth, and at the Roots of the Tongue: At that time the Horse hath in his Wefand-pipe and stomach, a great deal of tough thick flegm; and when he cougheth much, as he will, thinking to void it, it will come in lumps into his mouth, and he will swallow it down again; and at that time his breath will be

N

very

very hot, and his Mouth very red: and if he have a Canker in his Throat, or at the root of his Tongue, or in his Mouth, you shall discern it smell by the heat and stinking breath. To cure the Canker, see Receipt C. and there is also the Receipt, and here also will cause a present cure. Now to cure the Strangling, or a Cold that runs at the Nose, or hath done for half a year or more, or Squinsey, when he is troubled with tough, thick flegm: For these three last mentioned, take these following Ingredients, and give them as you are directed: First, one ounce of Anniseeds, an ounce of Turmerick beaten to powder, half a quartern of Brandy or *Aqua vite*, half a dozen spoonfuls of White-wine or Vinegar, a pint and half of strong Beer; put all these into a Skillet, and heat them Blood-warm, and give it to the Beast fasting: then presently run the point of the Cornet-horn into the third furrow in the roof of his Mouth, and let him bleed, then walk him a mile and set him up. Clothe and litter him warm. Let him stand upon the Bit four or five hours, he will sweat with his drink till one drop follow another. If you see he be sick and desirous to lye down, you may let him; Give him no Mashs but onely warm water to drink, with an handful or two of Wheat-bran put into it, and the next Morning warm water and Bran again: and presently after give him two ounces of Honey, and half a pint of White-wine, or half a pint of Wine-Vinegar, if you have not White-wine; walk him a mile after it: The third day in the Morning after this Drink, in the beginning of the Receipt, give him this Cordial; three pints of stale Beer, Household-bread a piece as big as a great Toast, and crum it in a quarter of a pound of Butter; put them into a Skillet together, and heat them a little upon the

the fire, and when you take it off, put in a quart<sup>r</sup> of a pound of Honey : stir them together, and give it him Blood-warm fasting ; then ride him a mile, and let him up warm clothed and littered. Three or four hours after, give him warm water and Bran to drink : Every two or three days for a Cold, whether it cause the Beast to run at the Nose or no, or be in Glanders. In course of Physick, after his drink, give him this Cordial to bring him to a stomach, it will help to kill the Canker in his mouth or throat, clear the guts, and cleanse the lights : with one drink of White-wine and Honey, and these Cordials, he will be in a very short time cleared and cured. If in the time of his cure, he hath had Kernels between his Jaws, apply the charge of Sope and Brandy, which will either quite sink them, or break them. Again, if there be no Kernels, but hard swellings in the Jaws, as most part there is when he hath the Strangling ; in this case also apply the Charge of Sope and Brandy, and heat it well in. If this swelling do break in the time of the cure, let it run and heal up of it self : If the swelling between his Jaws be soft all over, and in the midst of the swelling the hair begins to scale off, you may then put in the point of your Knife a little way through the skin, and let it out : if it be not full ripe, it will heal up with proud rank flesh, and there will be a knot between his Jaws, which is an ugly blemish ; therefore heal it up with nothing, but let it heal up of it self. In the time of any of these cures, air and ride him out two or three times every day ; it will do him abundance of good, if you do not ride him too hard, but gently. If that which comes out of his Nose be yellowish, and afterwards white, there is hope of perfecting the cure ; the drink will make him swell, and be very sick, but it will do him a great deal of good. *Proved.* N 2 CXL



**CXL.** *For a Horse that hath a dry Surfeit in his Body, and falls away in his flesh : That hath a weak Cough, and is in a Consumption.*

**T**He signs of this disease are, he will not thrive, but be gaunt-bellied, and dried up in his Body, and cannot cough but gruntingly, by reason of the Cold and Surfeit, and great soreness in his Body: The remedy is this: First, ride him a mile, and then let him Blood in the bottom of the Belly, at the lower end of all the Spur-vein: after he hath bled well, give him this drink, one ounce of Anniseeds, half an ounce of Diapente, four penny-worth of English-Saffron, one ounce of Syrrup of Colts-foot, one ounce of brown Sugar-candy, one ounce of Bay-berries, four or five spoonfuls of White-wine-Vinegar, a pint and a half of strong Beer: put all these into a Skillet, and heat them luke-warm, and give it to the Beast fasting, and ride him two or three furlongs after it; then tie him up to the Rack, and let him fast five or six hours after his drink, and clothe and litter him up very warm; then unbit him, and give him a little sweet Hay till night, then give him warm water and Bran to drink. The next day in the morning, before he eat or drink, burst half a peck of Oats, with two ounces of Fenugreek, two ounces of Coriander-seeds (for want of Coriander, two ounces of Caraway-seeds) burst them all together well, and give him them before he eat or drink. And at noon give him warm water and Bran, and after three or four days end, give him this drink after the first drink: One ounce of Anniseeds beaten small, half a pound of Raisins of the Sun, an handful of un-set Leeks cut small, two quarts of mild Beer; boyl all these

these together in a Skillet till half be consumed, then take out all the Raisins, and beat them in a Mortar, stones and all : take some of the Liquor wherein they were boyled, and wash the Mortar clean therewith, and put it again into the Kettle amongst the rest, then take the Kettle off, and put in as much Butter as an Egg, and let it melt, and give him this drink fasting, walk him a furlong or two, and tye him up to the Rack for five or six hours, and clothe and litter him up warm, then give him Hay, and at night warm water and Bran. The next day have in readiness some Oats, Coriander-seeds, or for want of them, some Caraway-seeds, burst them together by Eleven or Twelve a Clock, and throw some of them into the Crib, as you were directed before ; and if he refuse to eat them, strow some Wheat-bran over them, and that will cause him to eat them : give him but a few at a time. After this second drink given, you shall see the Horse within two or three days to void at the Nose yellow Glanders, or some other colour ; ride him moderately thrice a day, and keep him warm in the Stable. And two or three days after you have given him this last drink and warm water, then, and not before, water him at the River, and presently after it give him every morning two ounces of Hony, and half a pint of White-wine mixed together, heated luke-warm ; you may give it him abroad or in the Stable, it matters not where : once in three or four days fasting, you may give him a Cordial, made of Beer, Honey, Bread, and Butter, the very same ; and you must so order it, as you were directed in the foregoing Receipt. And these drinks, Honey and White-wine, and your Cordials, will make him come to his stomach in a short time, and thrive very much : put the water wherein the Oats

and seeds were burst, into a Payl of cold water, and let him drink of that as much as you can : when an Horse is fat, and the Grease set in his body, if he have a stomach, then give the Purge of Aloes first ; but if he be fat and sick, and hath no stomach, then give him Honey and White-wine, and his Cordials first, and afterwards his Purge of Aloes. *Proved.*

CXLI. *For the Yellows.*

**T**He Signs are, his Eyes will be strip'd with red, and be yellow, and his lips will be pimpled and look yellow : The cure is : Let him bleed on both his Neck-veins ; after that, give him this drink ; one ounce of Turmerick and Anniseeds beaten small, a quarter of a pint of White-wine-Vinegar, half a quarter of a pint of *Aqua vite* ; put them all into a Skillet, and heat it luke-warm, and give it to the Beast ; put a Spoonful of the flower of Brimstone into the first Hornful that you give him : pour it down his Throat, and then give him all the rest of the drink, one Hornful after another ; tie him up to the Rack for three or four hours, and then give him wet clean Hay, and at night water and Bran, or a Mash. If you have not the aforesaid things in a readines by you, then give him an ounce of Horse-spice, which you shall find mentioned in the following Receipts, and there you shall find how to make it, and for what to give it, and when, and likewise how to keep it by you : If one drink be not enough, give him the second ; if he do not fall to his meat at three days end, give him a Cordial or two, warm water for the first day and no more, and cold water afterwards : Two or three days after his Drink, work him moderately : If you cannot get Turmerick, take

take an handful of Celandine : if one drink will not,  
two will cure him.

*Proceed.*

### CXLII. For the Staggers.

**I**T comes at first of some corrupt Blood, or gross  
or tough humours oppressing the Brain, from  
whence proceedeth a vaporous spirit, dissolved by a  
weak heat, which troubleth all the head. The signs  
are these : Dimness of sight, and reeling and stag-  
gering to and fro; he with very pain will thrust his  
head against the Walls, and forsake his meat. For  
remedy, do these things in order as you are here di-  
rected : First take a pretty long streight stick, of the  
bigness of a Tobacco-pipe, smooth it well, and cut a  
notch or crotch at one end; then run up the stick to  
the top of his head, and job a little hard and turn  
the stick, then pull it out and he will bleed freely.  
It is bad to cord him about the neck in this disease;  
when he hath bled well in the head, give him this  
Drink, an ounce of Anniseeds, an ounce of Turme-  
rick beaten small, half a quarter of a pint of *Aqua  
vite*, a pint and a half of mild Beer, a pint of Ver-  
juyce, or if you have not Verjuyce, then take a quar-  
ter of a pint of White-wine-Vinegar, and put it to  
the Beer, and all the rest together, and heat them  
luke-warm, and give it to the Beast in the morning  
before he drink : as soon as you have given it him,  
take a handful of Herb-grace, and beat it small in a  
Mortar, a penny-worth of *Aqua vite*, and put half  
the *Aqua vite* into one Ear, holding it upright in the  
hollow of your hand, and put half the Herb-grace  
after it, and put Wool, Tow, or Hards after it to  
keep it in; then tye up the ear with a Wollen Lint or

Garter, and so do the like with the other Ear : stitch up his Ears with a Needle and Thread, or otherwise with your Lint tye up both his Ears together, and at twenty four hours end, unſtitch or untie his Ears, and take out the Wool and Herb-grace ; the next day in the Morning, let him blood on both ſides his Neck, and ſave of the blood a pint, or more, which you may do in a bowl, and put thereto a handful of Salt, and ſtir it well together, and give it the Horſe faſting : four or five hours after give him ſweet Hay, and at night warm water and Bran : after you have given him the firſt Drink, tye up one of his fore-legs, and ſtrew good ſtore of Litter under him, and he will lye down and take his reſt, and come to himſelf within a day or two, or elſe be ſoon dead ; the Vinegar will make him piſs, and the *Aqua vite* will make him ſleep : if he comes not to his ſtomach with taking the Vinegar or Verjuyce before mentioned, then give him Honey and White-wine, and the Cordial ; as you are directed in the Receipt for a dry Surfeit. After any ſickneſs, give him when he comes to eat his Provender, Bran and Peaſe, or Bran and Beans ; when you let him blood in the head with your Cornet horn, let him blood in the third furrow of his mouth, and let him bleed well, and let him blood in the griſtle of his noſe, with a long Bodkin, or Shoemakers Awl.

CXLIII. *For a Cold newly taken.*

**T**AKE half an ounce of Diapente, two penny-worth of Sallet-Oyl, and two penny-worth of Treacle ; put them into a pint and a half of ſtrong Beer, and give it to the Beaſt luke-warm faſting : give him

him warm water for two days, and a Mash of ground Malt, and keep him warm in the time of the cure.

*Proved.*

*CXLIV. For an old Cold which causeth the Horse to run sometimes at one Nostril, and sometimes at both, and bath done for a year together, and is knotted with Kernels under his Throat between his Jaws.*

**T**He Cure is thus: Take an ounce of Turmerick, an ounce of Anniseeds, beat them small, one ounce of Lignum-vitæ, you shall have it at the Apothecaries, a quarter of a pint of *Aqua-vitæ*, a quarter of a pint of White-wine-Vinegar, one handful of un-set Leeks beaten small in a Mortar, wash the Mortar with Beer; put all these together with a pint and a half of strong Beer: give them to the Beast fasting luke-warm, and tie him up to the Rack six or seven hours, and litter and clothe him up warm; at the end of that time give him a little sweet Hay, and at night give him some warm water and Bran; the next morning give him warm water and Bran again, and presently after, give him two ounces of Honey, and half a pint of White-wine luke-warm; then ride him three or four miles after it, clothe and litter him warm when he comes in; whilst he is abroad, boyl him half a peck of Oats with two ounces of Fennugreek, and two ounces of Coriander-seeds, burst them all together, and give it him: the third day morning, give him a Cordial made of three pints of stale Beer, a quarter of a pint of Honey, as much Butter, a good piece of Household-bread: put in the Honey and Butter after the Bread and Beer is boyled together, and give him his Cordial fasting luke-warm; the fourth day morning, give him this  
Drink,



Drink, one ounce of Polypodium, one ounce of Bay-berries, an ounce of long Pepper, one ounce of brown Sugar-candy; beat them all small, and put them into a quart of mild strong Beer, heat it luke-warm, and before you give it him, ride him a mile, and then give it him, and ride him two or three miles after it; clothe and litter him up warm: after he hath fasted some four or five hours, give him bursten Oats, with two ounces of Fennugreek, and two ounces of Coriander, as before; if you have no Coriander, then take two ounces of Carraway-seeds, and give him that night of the Oats and Seeds, and put the water where the Oats and Seeds were boyled, into some cold water, and let him drink that and no other; when you have rested him a week, then give him the first Drink mentioned in this Receipt, and follow him as you are directed every day; in the third week give him the same things again, in the same manner, and at the same distance of days, in all points, as you did the first week, and in three or four weeks it will be a Cure: The first drink doth loosen the filth, and open the Lights, and set them a running. The Cordial is, White-wine and Honey will keep him to his stomach, help him to avoid filth at the nose and mouth, and will much nourish him within; they do cleanse the stomach, breast and bowels, and do much waste the Squinsie in the throat; they do cut the tough thick flegm. If you order these things as you are in many places directed, and air him moderately once or twice a day, the Horse will soon be sound again. The last Drink of Polypodium, long Pepper, and Bay-berries, is a purger of the Veins, Blood and Liver, and will stay the wasting of the Body: That day morning you give him the first Drink, apply the Charge of Soap and Brandy,

Brandy, made in a Salve, to the Kernels between his Jaws, and in a Weeks time it will be fallen flat, and not break : lay the Charge on scalding hot, and heat it well in. If you see the yellow matter to become white, there will be the greater hopes of the speediness of the Cure.

*Proved.*

CXLV. *For a Canker in the Mouth.*

**Y**OU shall know it by these signs; He will flaver at the Mouth, and the Roots of his Tongue will be eaten with the Canker, the sides of his Mouth will be hot, raw, and yellow : If the Canker have eaten any holes in his Mouth, and caused many sores, then take a pottle of running Spring-water, an handful of Red-sage, a dozen sprigs of Rosemary, an handful of unset Hyssop. If this disease happen in Summer, then add five or six Walnut-leaves, and a quarter of a pound of Roch-allum : put all these into a Kettle, and let them boyl till they be half consumed; then put all into an earthen Pan, and let it stand till it be cold : you need not take out the herbs, but when you use it, take ten or twelve spoonfuls of this Liquor, then pull out his Tongue with one hand, and have in a readines a Linnen cloth tyed at a sticks end; dip it into the Liquor, and wash his Mouth and Throat all over; then pull out his Tongue again, and throw a handful of Salt into his Mouth ; then presently after it dip another sticks end tyed with a Rag into Tar, and put it all over his mouth where the Sores are ; and once in three days give him a Cordial, and White-wine and Hony, made as you may see before, and the same quantity : Ride or work him upon it. This Water, Salt, Tar, White-wine and Honey, and Cordials, will bring the Horse to a stomach

stomach, cleanse his stomach, loosen his body : It will take away the heat of his stomach, and comfort his stomach, and cut the tough flegm there ; it will cure the Canker in a very short time, except his Tongue and Mouth be very much eaten indeed. You need not wash his Mouth afterwards with the water and Tar, for the Wine and Hony, and the Cordials will heal it alone, and work the aforesaid effects. Let the Hay and Provender you give him, be clean and moist, it will be the better. Give him no Chaff, for that will stick in his Mouth and fester it. *Proved.*

**CXLVI.** *To cure a Foul, Rank, Pocky Farcion, which runs all over an Horse, or in any particular part of his Body.\**

**A**N Horse that hath the Farcion, if his breath smell very strong, and stink, then do not meddle with him, for his Lights are rotten, and there is no cure for him, for he is as full of them within as without. But if his breath be sweet, there is no question of the cure : First, for all knotted, budded Farcions, separate the sound from the sick, for this disease is infectious, they will take it one of another. This disease cometh first of Colds and Surfeit : for remedy do as followeth ; Give him but a little Hay overnight, to keep his Jaws from falling ; the next day morning, let him bleed on both sides of the Neck, and let him bleed well ; then give him this Drink : One ounce of Aristolochia, an ounce of Turmerick, one ounce of Anniseeds : beat your Turmerick and Anniseeds small, and grate the root of Aristolochia, and put them all together, with one handful or two of Lung-wort or Liver-wort, Herbgrace, one good handful of Red-sage, a handful of green or dried Worm-

Wormwood, one handful of green Fennel: and if it be Winter that you cannot get it green, then instead thereof take two ounces of Fennel-seeds, cut the herbs small, and beat the seeds, and put them all to steep in three pints of running Spring-water, and let them lye in steep all night: the next day morning before you give it him, ride him a Mile till he be warm; at his return give it him cold as it stood all night; then ride him gently a mile after his drink, set him up warm clothed and littered; let him stand upon the Bit seven or eight hours, then unbit him and give him a little sweet Hay, and at night warm water with some Wheat-bran in it: the next day morning ride to the River, and let him drink, but let him drink but once a day, but ride him well upon his watering, and at the end of three days, give him his former drink again, and order him as before; work him moderately all the time of his cure: Be it in Winter or in Summer, for this Disease keep him in the house with dry meat; when he is cured, you may turn him out, or keep him in the Stable which you please; when he is cold, wash him twice a day up to the back, soak him well in the River, and at three or four days distance, if you see need require, give him two or three drinks more, ordering him as before: As soon as you have given him the first drink, with the end of your Cornet-horn let him blood in the furrow in the top of his Mouth. These drinks will make him run at the Nose much white or yellow matter, and they will make him spew at the Mouth much filth; these drinks will much purge and dry up all the gross humours in his body, and cleanse the blood: After these drinks given, you shall see the Farcions to appear with red heads, and they will drop out of themselves; and where you see them

- ready

ready to drop out, apply this Medicine ; Take a quarter or half a pound of Roch-allum, and put it into the fire, and you shall see it run and be all of a Cake ; then take it out and beat it to powder, and mix as much as you think you shall use with your fasting Spittle, till it be like an Oyntment ; and there where you see they are ready to drop out, lay a little of this upon the head of the bud, which is the head of the Farcy: and where you see they are hard in the flesh, let them alone, for some will dye, and the rest will drop out of themselves ; ride him up and down in the River twice a day, as far as the swelling goes, a good while after the Allum and Spittle have taken place : These drinks will kill and dry up any pocky Gangrene Farcion, let it be in the head, body, legs, yea although it be run all over him ; it will dry them quite up. These Drinks, with the Soak in the River, and the Allom and Spittle, will make a speedy Cure.

*Proved.*

**CXLVII.** *For a Farcy in the Head.*

**I**F it be in the head and no where else, then blood him in both the Neck-veins in the morning before he hath drank ; then give him the former drinks for a pocky Farcy, and no drink else, and after that with your Cornet-horns point let him blood in the third furrow of the roof of his mouth, and tye him up to the Rack for five or six hours ; then give him a little clean Hay, and at night some warm water and Bran. I say if it be in his head, and no where else, and that some certain small buds do there appear ; then do nothing but blood him in the Neck-veins, and give him the drink, and bleed him in the palate of the mouth, and at the very same time apply  
the

the Charge of Soap and Brandy, as hot as you can, and heat it well in ; lay it not upon the head of the buds, but lay it all over the swelling, and in a short time, with the drink using, the Farcy will die, and the swelling will fall. *Proved.*

**CXLVIII.** *For a swelling in the Fore-legs, or After-legs.*

**I**F the Beast have a great Surfeit, that falls down into his fore or after legs, if you think it will come to a Farcy, and you see it grow very hard, or two or three buds appear, you shall prevent it by giving him two or three Drinks for the pocky Farcy-on, at three days distance between every drink, and by charging the swelled legs with Soap and Brandy, if it be not broken before : If you fear a Farcy, or see a few buds, do thus three or four days : after the Soap and Brandy is laid on, ride him into the River half a quarter of an hour at a time, twice a day.

**CXLIX.** *For a Swelling in the Brisket, below the Chest.*

**I**F it be a Surfeit that swells in the Brisket, or in any other part of the Beast, if you think it will come to a Farcy, and you see two or three buds to appear ; then give him two or three Drinks for the pocky Farcy, at three days distance between each Drink. Let the swelling be broke or not broke, lay the Charge of Soap and Brandy hot on, above the buds, and heat it well in ; after the buds appear, lay the Allom and Spittle upon it : These Remedies are enough for Diseases of this nature. *Proved.*



**CL. For a Swelling with a blow upon the Chest, or any other part.**

**I**F the swelling comes by means of a blow, be it where it will, be it hot or cold, if it be not broken, lay nothing to it but the Charge of Soap and Brandy, and heat it well in, and in four or five days it will either quite sink it, or break it: If it break, see from pag. and there you will meet with directions for the purpose. *Proved.*

**CLI. For a Farcey that is broken out in the Legs.**

**I**F you see it to be thus, then do not charge it, except you see it to swell above those buds, up to the body-wards, and then in such a case lay on the Charge of Sope and Brandy to stop it from running higher, as you are in many places in this Book taught before, upon the swelling all over above the buds, but not upon the buds below, onely let him blood on the Neck-veins, and in the third Furrow in the roof of his Mouth, and then give him one or two of the pocky Farceion-drinks, at three days distance, till you see all the swelling killed and dried up, with the Charge of Sope and Brandy, and the drinks. Those buds that are broken, lay the Allum and fasting Spittle upon them, and they will dry and heal up, for those that are in the flesh, some will die in the flesh, and some will drop out. This is a certain cure.

*Proved.*

**CLII.**

CLII. *For a Water-Farcy.*

**T**He signs to know it from a Pocky-Farcy, are these: He will swell in great bags as big as your head, sometimes most along under the belly, and sometimes about the chaps and under his jaws. The Remedy: Take a Nail-rod, and make it bending at the end the length of a flemme, so as it may a very little more than go through the skin: at this end make it red-hot, and with it strike many holes all over the Swelling, and you shall see the yellow water come out pouring, and the swelling, whether in his jaws or chaps, or under his belly, suddenly fall quite down; this done, to qualifie the heat of the Iron, rub a little Soap upon it, and give him but one Drink for this, which you give for the pocky Farcion: The more you work any farcy Horse, the sooner the Cure will be done, and the better he will thrive. If your Horse be poysoned with any poysonable Medicine, your often putting him into the cold water will destroy the working of it, that it will not go any further: Give him warm water to drink, and let him stand in the House the time of the Cure. *Proved.*

You may work any Farcied Horse with another, but let them neither stand together, nor feed together: And to make all sure, give the sound Horse one or two Drinks at three days distance, which you give for a pocky Farcied Horse, and those Drinks will prevent a Farcy of the sound Horse.

CLIII. *For a Button-Farcy.*

**T**His Farcy you shall know by these signs: The Horse will be full all over of bunches and knots, some as big as Pease, some as big as Nuts, they lye in bubbles in the skin, and are easie to be seen: First, let blood on both sides his neck, and let him bleed well: the next thing is, take a little Housleek, and beat it and strain it through a fine linnen cloth, and put it into his Ears; then take an ounce of Aristolochia, and grate it small, the tops of Rue an handful, as much Hogs-grease as an Egg, beat these three last together till they be like a Salve, as soon as you have put in the Housleek, into each ear alike, divide the other into two parts, and put the one half into one ear, and the other half into the other ear, and put some Wool after it to keep it in, then stitch up his ears with a needle and thread, and tie a Lint hard about his ears, that he may not shake it out; then tie the Lint of both ears together a little strait: when you have done thus, with the point of your Pen-knife make a little hole in his fore-head; and after that, with your Cornet-horn raise the skin from his fore-head the breadth of your hand, round about the hole with your knife; then take a red dock-root, and slice it, and put into the hole three pieces of it, which will be enough at once, it will draw a great deal of corruption out of it, the corruption that comes out will scald the hair off; after the strength of the root is gone, it will drop out of it self; when you see it is dropped out, anoint it with a little fresh Butter, after you have put in the root, lay a Plaister of Burgundy-pitch over it to keep out the wind and cold: Let him fast seven or eight hours, and let him stand

stand upon the Bit, you shall see him flaver, champ and foam as if he were ridden, give him warm water and Bran at night, let it be in his Ears two days before you pull it out. Taking this course, you shall see the Knots and Bunches to fall in a short time, and the hair will come again upon his Fore-head. *Proved.*

CLIV. *To cure the Cords; which is when an Horse can neither lift up his Head to the Rack, nor put his Head to the ground, no not to his Knees.*

**Y**OU may know this Disease by the Signs above; the cause thereof cometh by reason of an extreme cold which lodgeth in the stomach, and causes the Cords to set and shrink quite up, so that the Beast can neither lift his Head up nor down, but onely to eat meat out of the Crib; in this case a Horse is afraid to lye down, and if he be laid, he cannot rise. The remedy; First, make him a comfortable drink of these things; Take half an ounce of Diapente, one ounce of Anniseeds beaten small, three penny-worth of *English-Saffron*, dry it by the fire in a Paper, and crumble it small with your fingers, two ounces of Honey, two ounces of fresh Butter, a pint and half of strong Beer, a quarter of a pint of White-wine-Vinegar, put all these things together, and set it on the fire till the Butter and Honey be melted, and no longer; then take it off, and give it the Beast luke-warm fasting, then walk or ride him till he be warm, then set him up, and tie him upon the Bit five or six hours, clothe and fitter him up warm, after it give him a little Hay, and then a Malt, and no warm water that night but the water in his Malt; give him the next day in the Morning another Malt, and about nine or ten of the clock warm water and Bran;

and thus keep him for four or five days : look where the Sign is, if it be in the Head or stomach, do not cut him, for it will not be so well ; yet you may cut him, although the Sign be there, but it will not be so well. In cutting observe this ; You must cut him at the very bottom of the Breast, you shall see the Vein, and under the Vein lyes the great sinew, as big as a Tobacco-pipe stale, just by the in-side to the top of his Leg : when you see where the Vein lyes, draw the skin aside which lyes over the Vein, and cut that part of the skin an inch or more, which may just fall upon the Vein again, this being cut with your Cornets-horn point, make a little way and you shall see a blew film lye over the Vein ; chase it a pieces till you come to see the Vein, with the point of your Cornet-horn, then draw the Vein aside with one hand, and put your Cornet-horns end under the Sinew, and raise the Sinew up above the skin with your Cornet-horn, and cut it quite asunder ; let it go, and put a little Butter and Salt into the Wound, and afterwards heal it up with some of the afore-named healing Salves ; walk him an hour at a time twice a day for a Week together. If you find that with the first drink, the Cold breaks at his Nostrils, then give him the same drink again at three or four days distance between each drink, and order him as you are at the beginning of this Receipt directed. If need require, give him a third drink. It is an extream Cold that shuts the Cords : this drink will break the Cold, and in a short time the Beast will do well, and stir his Head again.

*Proved.*

CLV. *For a Stumbling Horse.*

**F**irst, tye him up with a Halter close to a Post that stands in a Shop-window, then take your Knife and cut a hole lengthways down to his Lips, end-wards in the midst of his Nose, between his Nostrils the length of your Thumb: when you have cut through the skin, then do off the red Film with your Cornet-horns end, and you shall see a white flat Sinew lye before your Eye; take the point of your Cornet-horn and put under it, and raise it above the skin, then pull it hard out with your Cornet-horn, and turn your Cornet-horn about, then pull it the second time, and turn your Horn again, and so the third time; in this doing, you shall see him bring his Hinder-legs to his Fore-legs almost, when you have thus pulled and turned the Sinew two or three times about the Cornet-horn, then cut the Sinew under the Cornet to the Lips end, but cut not the Sinew upon the Cornet, nor about it; when you have cut it let it go, and put a little Butter and Salt into the Wound, then over it lay a Plaister of Burgundy-pitch to keep out the wind, and you shall see the Horse go very well, and never stumble afterwards. *Proved.*

CLVI. *How to make Diapente.*

**T**AKE a quarter of a pound of Aristolochia, a quarter of a pound of Myrrh, half a pound of Bayberries, the outward Husk pilled off, two ounces of White-Ivory, two ounces of Harts-horn, the round root of Aristolochia is better than the long, cut the outward rind, and then grate it small, do not dry it, but after you have grated it, beat it small by it self.



or with the other things in a Mortar: then put them into a fine Sieve, and searce the finest out, then put the biggest into the Mortar again, and beat it as small as you can, then searce the finest from that, and beat the rest again, and so do and searce it till you have done all very fine, then put it into a Bladder, and keep it for your use; Of this Diapente you may give an ounce at a time, although you give other things with it. An ounce of Diapente is a good drink alone in a pint of strong Beer for a new taken cold. *Proved.*

CLVII. *How to make Horse-spice.*

**T**AKE a quarter of a pound of Anniseeds, a quarter of a pound of *English*-Liquorish, a quarter of a pound of Grains, a quarter of a pound of Fennel-seeds, a quarter of a pound of Flour of Brimstone, more or less, these are the proportions to make the Horse spice, slice the Liquorish and dry it, and beat them all together. If you will, you may put in half a pound of Elicampane, first dried, and then beaten small in a Mortar with the rest of the things; you may either put all these together, or else keep them severally by themselves. An ounce of this Horse-spice, with a spoonful of Sallet-oyle, and a spoonful or two of Jean-Treacle, is a good drink (for a Countryman, who will give but a shilling or eighteen pence) in a quart of strong Beer, this drink is for a Cold and to make a Horse thrive, and to prevent Diseases; if any man upon letting his Horse blood, will have him likewise to have a drink, give an ounce of this Horse-spice in a pint of strong Beer heated luke-warm in a morning fasting, let him stand in the House, and give him warm water to drink, and a Mash.

*Proved.*

CLVIII.

## CLVIII. To cure a Ring-bone.

**T**His Ring-bone always groweth upon the In-ſtep a little above the Hoof on the After-leg, about the bignefs of a Walnut, ſometimes bigger, ſometimes leſſer, in a hard long cruſhy ſubſtance. The cure is: Firſt, take up the Vein of the inſide of the ſame Leg where the Ring-bone grows, then to make a certain cure of it, burn it with a hot Iron that is of the thickneſs of the back of a Knife, upon the top of the Ring-bone ſo far as the Swelling goes, and with your hot Iron make three ſtrikes downwards, and three ſtrikes croſs them, as you may ſee in this figure: burn it but till it look yellow and no more, then take a Horſe-nail, and drive it through a pretty big ſtick, ſo that the point may come through as much as may go through the ſkin, and make it juſt to bleed, ſtrike the point of the Nail into the ſeared lines in every ſide three or four holes, then take an handful of Salt, and rub it hard in with your hands, a quarter of an hour after, lay this charge to the Ring-bone, as much Burgundy-pitch as a Walnut, and as much black Pitch, half an ounce of Maſtick, boyl them all together till they be melted, then take a flat ſtick and ſpread it on good and hot, then ſtock it with Sheremans ſtocks, and dab them on cloſe, this before it comes off, will lay it as flat as can be: He muſt not be ridden of a Fortnight, he muſt ſtand in the firſt night, and afterwards he may ſtand in or run out, ſo as he run in dry ground, this will be an abſolute cure in once dreſſing.

*Proved.*

CLIX. *For a Spaven as big as an Egg.*

**I**T groweth upon the inside of the hough of the after-leg : First, beat it with a Blood-stick until it be soft, then anoint it with six penny-worth of the Oyl of Origanum upon the bone-spavin which you bruised, put your Oyl into an Oyler-shell, or some such thing, and rub it in with your fingers, no where but upon the place which you bruised : Two days after the Oyl hath taken its course, take two or three ounces of the Oyl of Swallows, and anoint the Cord-Sinews in the bent of the leg, to reach and give liberty to the Sinews that are shrunk : lay on of the Oyl of Swallows but half an ounce at a time, and lay it on no where else, but upon the Sinews on the bent of the leg ; after that the Oyl of Swallows is well soaked in, you may ride him or work him ; This Oyl of Swallows doth much lengthen and give liberty to the Sinews, at three or four days distance you may lay on half an ounce more. If Blood-bags come in the Spavin-place at the same time the Bone-Spavin comes, then do not fear it with your Iron by no means, but onely lay the Charge of Soap and Brandy hot on, and heat it well in with a bar of Iron, and for certain it will cause it to fall. An able Farrier is of that opinion, that the Receipt in-- — will speedily make it to fall, if first you beat the Bone-spavin with a Blood-stick, and afterwards apply the Cantharides and Nerve-Oyl, as there you shall find it set down. *Proved.*

CLX. *To make a star in an Horses fore-head.*

**F**irst, with a pair of Scizars cut away the hair close to the skin, in such a place as you would have the form of a star to be; then take a piece of red brick, and rub it hard upon every place, where you have clipt away the hair; rub it till it be at the roots of the hair, then wipe it clean with a linnen-rag; then make a Plaister of Burgundy-pitch, and spread it upon a linnen-cloth, no longer nor wider than the form of the star it self; then a little before you lay it on, lay a hot Iron upon the Pitch to soften it, that it may stick on the better, then clap it to the place, as a plaister fit for the star, and lay a hot iron upon the back of the Plaister to heat it; then over the first Plaister lay another Plaister a little broader, heating the second as you did the first, and so let it stick on till it come off of it self, which may be a month; when these Plaisters come off, then to make the hair come white in the place where you would have the star be, take a little Honey and Butter, more Honey than Butter, and mix them together, and anoint the star once in three days, and do so for that distance of days four or five times, and in a quarter of a year you shall see the thing desired, he may stand in the house or run abroad; you may work him or ride him: I know nothing to the contrary, but that a man with this course taking, may make a mark in any form, what he pleaseth, and where he pleaseth about the Beast, whether in his buttocks, sides, or any other place as well as the fore-head.

CLXI. *For the Pains or Scratches or rotten broken Cuts, putrified Sinews, this Receipt will cure in a wonderful manner.*

**I**F it be the Pains and Scratches, do thus: Take a pail of fair water, if two or three, and wash his legs clean, and clip away the hair close to the skin so far as his legs are crannied or scabby, then with a pail or two of fair water wash his legs clean again, & let him stand till he be dry; then take half a pound of English-Honey, one ounce of beaten Pepper, ten heads of Garlick, put all these into a bowl or cup, and beat them together till they come to a Salve: If the Pains and Scratches be on both legs, then divide the Salve into two parts, and lay one half upon one sheet of Paper, and the other half upon another half of gray Paper, and take a broad piece of linnen-cloth, and lay it over the Paper, and lay the Plaister to the hinder part of his legs, where the sore always is, and sew them on with a needle and thread pretty hard, so as it may not come off, sew it close in the foot-lock, and all the way up so far as his legs are scabby, and let it lie on two days, you must make a small Thumb-band of fine Hay, and wind all over his legs, and over the Plaister, and let it remain as long; at two days end, take a Linnen-Cloth and wipe the chaps of every cranny & crack in his heels clean; then lay on a fresh Plaister, and do as you did before in every particular; and at two days end take away that Plaister, then lay on another, and let it lie on three days, and when you take that off, and see, if need require lay on another Plaister, and let it lie on three days more, and in three or four times thus dressing, it will be quite dried up, and whole. Let him

him not come in the water all the time of his cure. If his Sinews be rotten, broken, cut in pieces, or much putrified, then apply this Medicine as before, and let it lie on the same time as before; and as it heals dress it the seldomer, and bind a Thumb-band of Hay over the Plaister, and keep him out of the water, and in the house all the time of the Cure. This Salve will draw clean, and knit the Sinews together again in a wonderful manner. It is for Pains and Scratches, and Sinews in this nature, the best Cure in the World, If one or two of the pocky Farcies Drinks were given in this case, I am confident it would much further the Cure, and dry up those humours in the body which feed the Scratches in his legs.

*Proved.*

**CLXII.** *For the Strangullion in an Horse.*

**T**He signs to know it are, It much differeth from that, when an Horse cannot Stale, and differeth from the Disease called the Gripe or Fret in the Guts, which will put an Horse to abundance of pain, and make him to tumble and wallow: This Disease called the Strangullion, if a Horse have it he will look gaunt and cannot piss, he will offer, and stand straining to piss, but cannot; his Bladder will be ready to burst, with extreme fulness and heat of his water: for present remedy do this; take a pint of Claret-wine redded well, and put into it an ounce of Ivy-Berries beaten small, one ounce of Parsley-seeds beaten small, and give it him at any time, once doing is enough.

*Proved.*

You may likewise see for the Gravel and Stone what is given to a Man, and you may give it him.

**CLXIII.**



CLXIII. *For Fretting or Gripping in an Horses Belly.*

**T**His Disease will make the Horse to tumble and wallow with all four feet upwards, with a gripping wind in the Guts: you shall see some Horses in such extream pain, that they will swell therewith as if they would burst, and will endanger the breaking of their Bladder, and in this case they cannot dung. For remedy, Take a quart of cold Salt-beef or Pork brine, if you cannot get a quart, get a pint, put it into a Horn and pour it down cold; After this brine is down, anoint your hand and arm with Sallet-oyl or Butter, and rake him, and pull out as much Dung as you can, to give him all the ease you can; then take a good big Onion, and peel off the outward rind, then cut it lengthways and crossways in many places, then roul it up and down in a handful of Salt, and what Salt it will take up, put it into a hollow Pye of Butter, but before you put it into his fundament, anoint your hand and arm with Butter and Sallet-oyl, and run up the Onion thus rouled in the Salt and put into the Butter, as far as you can, and there leave it; then tie up his tail close to his rump as you can: being tyed with a Cord, fasten the Cord to his Girths, that it may keep in the Onion and Butter; then lead him out and walk him, and in a quarter of an hours time it will purge exceedingly. It will cleanse his Maw much, and cleanse his Guts, and kill the Worms: let his Tail be tyed but a little while, that he may purge freely, prick him in the Mouth with your Cornet-horn, the first thing you do. The next day morning give him a comfortable Drink, made of an ounce of Horse-spice, a quarter of a pint of White-wine-Vinegar, with a pint and a half of strong

strong Beer; put them together, and give it to the Beast luke-warm fasting, and he will do very well after it: Give him bursten Oats, or a Mash for two days after it, and warm water the day you give him this Drink.

*Proved.*

CLXIV. *To kill Botts or Worms.*

**Y**OU shall know whether your Horse be troubled with Botts or stomach-worms by these signs; He will squitter and dung them, and all of a sudden he will dung very small; in this case he will void small white Worms of himself, he will be much knotted under his over-lip, the roots of his Tongue will be fiery and yellow, his breath hot, sweat much as he stands in the Stable, and will be very faint: Now if you see him to sweat in the Stable; then know for certain that he is far gone, and is in great danger. For remedy, take Turmerick and Anniseeds of each an ounce, one penny-worth of the flour of Brimstone, half a quarter of a pint of Brandy, or *Aqua vite*; beat the Anniseeds and Turmerick small, and then put all together into a pint and a half of strong Beer, except the Brimstone, and that lay upon the top of the Horn: when you are ready to give him the Horn into his mouth, give this drink fasting, and let him fast four or five hours after it, and stand upon the bit, give him to drink warm water at night, the next day cold water, ride him after it, this drink will work pretty strong. If he have not been lately let blood before, let him Blood in the Neck-vein, and in the third furrow in the roof of his Mouth, with the end of your Cornet-horn. This drink at once giving will kill the Botts, and take him off his faintness, and much cleanse and purge him of rough, gross humors

in

in his body, upon which the Worms do breed. *Culpepper* saith, that *Box-tree* Leaves are excellent good to kill the Botts in Horses, they are hot, dry, and binding, you may put in a handful of them into this Drink, and try conclusions. *Proved*

CLXV. *For a Feaver in a Horse.*

**T**He signs are; The Horse will fall suddenly sick, and be very weak, he will go heavy and sad, as if he would tumble down, and be gaunt in his Belly, fall from his meat, and look weakly in his Eyes, hang down his head, and stand drooping: When this sickness first takes him, he will tremble and quake, as if he had an Ague; for this disease take no blood from him by any means, it is death if you do. The remedy is, Take half an ounce of *Diapente*, one ounce of *Bay-berries*, half an ounce of *Long-pepper*, beat all these together, then take half an ounce of *Dia-scordium*, and put all these into a pint and a half of strong Beer, heat it luke-warm, and give it to your Horse at any time of the day, for this Disease is dangerous, and will admit of no delays; cloth and litter him up very warm; the *Dia-scordium* in the Drink will cause him to lye down and sleep; after the drink hath done working, and the Horse done sweating, then give him half a pint of *White-wine*, and two ounces of *Honey*, mix them together, and heat them luke-warm, and give it him in the Stable, and after you come to air him, you may give it him abroad; three or four hours after, give him a Cordial made of three pints of stale Beer, and a quarter of a pint of *Honey*, and a quarter of a pound of *Butter*, and a good piece of *Houhold-bread*, boyl them a little together, and give it him luke-warm,

warm, and set him up for that Night; give him warm water & Bran at night; next morning fasting, give him the Cordial again, and at nine or ten a Clock, warm water and Bran; at two or three a Clock, White-wine and Honey, and at night warm water and Bran, and afterward, now and then a Cordial, and White-wine and Honey, and moderate airing will soon bring him to his stomach, when you see he is able to walk abroad, air him once or twice aday, it will do him much good. These Cordials, Wine and Honey, and airing of him, will cause the Beast to amend apace. After he comes to eat his meat pretty handsomly, take some Blood from his Spur-veins, the Frets from him, sweating will do him much good. If he lie down and sleep, it will bring him down to his senses, and the Horse will mend much in twenty four hours. If Diascordium do not make him take rest according to your mind, then you may take as much Poppy-seeds as will lie upon a Sixpence, in two half Hornfuls of any Beer, if you cannot get Poppy-seeds, which some call Red-weed-seeds, then buy white Poppy-water at the Apothecaries, and give at each Nostril a spoonful, and that will make him sleep heartily. *Proved.*

CLXVI. *For a dry inward Mange.*

**T**He signs are these: His hair will come off by plats, and sometimes it will come all off from head to tail, and there will be a dry scurvie Mange, as well where the hair comes off, as where it stays on, it is an extreme heat of the blood which causes the hair to scale off, and causeth the dry Mange in his body. If his Body be dried up and wasted, that the Horse be miserable lean and overcome with it, then

then give him this one drink and no more, not else, viz. One ounce of the flower of Brimstone, two ounces of Rosin beaten small, one ounce of Turmeric beaten small, one ounce of Anniseeds beaten small: put all these except the Brimstone, into a quart of strong Beer heated luke-warm, and give it him fasting, and put the Brimstone at the mouth of the Horn, to put it down with the other things: tie him up to the Rack for four or five hours; then give him warm water and Bran, at night bursten Oats: The next day after, give him in his Proven-der two spoonfulls of Rosin beaten to powder, at night the like; the next day the like, and then no more; this is to cleanse and purge away the mangy Surfeit that is in his body, and causeth the outward Mange: Also do thus, two or three days after his Drink, scrape off all the scabs and scurf clean with the back of your knife, or some other thing for that purpose, till the Blood and water appear. Then presently mix an equal proportion of Oyl of Turpentine and Beer together as will serve, and shake them well together in a Glasse-vial, and anoint the Horse all over but once, and it is an absolute Cure. It will smart terribly, tie him close for an hour, till it have taken its course. But if you be merrily disposed, as soon as you have dressed him all over with it, bid the Fellow go home with him and set him up; but believe it, he will not hold him long, for the beast will run away with him, and kick and wallow, and rub in a most strange manner, that one would think he were stark mad; but it will have done smarting in half an hour. It is a gallant Receipt. If the Horse be not much pined and shrunk of his flesh, do nothing but anoint him once outwardly, and give him this Drink, and the Oyl of Tur-



Turpentine and Beer, will kill the Mange of a Beast, Dog, Bullock, or any thing, with once dressing.

*Proved.*

CLXVII. *To stop bleeding at the Nose, or in the Mouth, where the Fleam or Knife hath cut a great gash: Or when you have cut the Vein in a Quitter-bone, and it bleeds that you know not how to stop it.*

**F**Or any of these, when nothing will stop it, this following will: First, take a Chafingdish of hot Coals, and burn three or four Linnen-rags upon the Coals, laying them one upon another, and let the Horses Mouth be over the smoak all the while: as the blood doth fall out of the Horses Nose and quench them, so you must blow them up with your breath again, till the Coals have burnt the Rags as black as a Coal, which when you perceive, take them as they are burnt black and bled upon by the Horse, and put them up into each Nostril an hand high, then hold up his Head, and have in readiness three or four quarts of strong Beer, and pour it down his Throat, to wash down the smoak and clotted blood which lyes in his Throat. If he snort the burnt Rags out, have other burnt hot Rags in a readiness to put up his Nostrils: And you must remember, as well when you fume him, as when you have stopt his Nostrils with burnt Rags, to be often pouring down his Throat cold Beer, because the blood returning a contrary way will choak him: This course taken will stop bleeding at the Nose of a Man. If an Horses Mouth be cut with a fleam at any time, when you let him blood in the Mouth, and the fleam glance and cut a gash in his Mouth, and that it bleed so that you know not how to stop it, then take some of these burnt Rags

P

and



and lay them as hot into the Wound as you can, and afterwards take another clean Rag and lay it over the Wound to keep in the burnt Rags, and tie on each side his Teeth a small string overthwart to keep it close to for 24 hours, at the end of which time you may take off the Cloth, but let the burnt Rags lye in the Wound as long as you please, for they will draw and heal mightily: when they come out you may put in more, and do as you did before: and so for a Quitter-bone, if you cut it till all the Veins bleed, and you cannot stanch the blood, then take of these hot burnt Rags and fill the hole full, and they will stop the blood in a very short time; and let it lye there for 24 hours, and they will draw it as white as can be, so that you may see what to do afterwards: This will stop the blood either at Nose, or in any Wound.

*Proved.*

CLXVIII. *For a Cold new or old, or a Cough wet or dry.*

**T**AKE of Rue one handful, chop or stamp it very small, and put to it a penny-worth of Anniseeds beaten to very fine powder; make it up in Pills with sweet Butter, and so give it to your Horse in a pint and an half of Ale or Beer fasting: ride him upon it, and let him fast four or five hours after it; Do this every third morning till you see his Cough quite gone. This hath been found to be most sovereign for an Horse that hath a Cold, whether newly or formerly taken; or for a wet or dry Cough: It is also most excellent for an Horse that hath been over-ridden, or any ways wronged by labour.

*Proved.*

CLXIX

CLXIX. *For a young Horse that hath taken a new Cold.*

**T**AKE water and Salt as much as will suffice, brew them well together, make it blood-warm and give it him, and do after as is necessary. This I find to be singular good to be given to a young Horse that hath newly taken cold. *Proved.*

CLXX. *For a new-taken Cold with a Coughing.*

**T**AKE of Bays, of Anniseeds, and of Liquorish, of each half a penny-worth, of brown Sugarcandy one penny-worth : make all these into powder, and sew them up in a fine Linnen-rag, and so tye it to the Bit or Snaffle of the Bridle, and so ride a Journey and travel him : If it be a Cold newly taken, it will cure him in a short time. This I have tryed and found to be good, for it will cure both Cold and Cough, if it be thus used with riding and exercise. *Proved.*

CLXXI. *For the Botts.*

**T**AKE as much black Sope as a Walnut, as much flower of Brimstone and a little Garlick bruised ; put these into a pint and an half of strong new Beer, or sweet wort, steep it all night, and give it the Beast next morning fasting, and tye him up to the Rack three or four hours after, then give him warm water and what meat you please. *Proved.*

CLXXII, *For a Blood-spavin.*

First, Take a strong Shop-halter, and put the Noose or Head-stall about his Neck close to his shoulders, then take the other end of the Halter, and take the contrary After-foot from the ground, which the Blood-spavin is not upon, and put the other end of the Halter about his Pastern, and draw it with the Halter from the ground, and tye it to the Head-stall of the Halter, that he may not set it down; by doing thus, you may take up the Vein and sear him as he stands, but the best way will be to cast him, and to tye his other three Legs, and let that be at liberty, then before you take up the Vein half a foot above the Spavin-place, in the small of the Ham in the in-side of his Leg, you must first draw the skin cross with your fingers on one side of the Vein, then cut a hole in the skin an inch and an half long down his Leg thus | in that part of skin which will lye right over the | Vein, then let the cut go, and the skin will lye over | the Vein: then with the point of your Cornet-horn lengthways as the wound is cut, chafe and fret the thin skin or film a pieces, that you may see the Vein lye blue; then with the point of your Cornet-horn, by degrees run it between the Vein and the skin, and raise the Vein above the skin, and after that put two short Shoemakers ends between the Vein and the flesh, a little distance one from the other, to tye or take up the Vein after it hath done bleeding; then, and not before, with the point of a Pen-knife, slit a little hole lengthways in the Vein, not cross the Vein by no means, for fear of cutting the Vein in pieces: you must open the Vein as it lyes upon the Horn, and when it hath bled enough,  
tye

tye the ends that you before put under it, above the slit of the Vein pretty hard, and tye the other bonds end below the slit of the Vein pretty just, and leave the bonds end an inch long hanging without the skin to keep the hole open, that the matter may come out at it, and that the skin may not heal up, before the wax threds have eaten the Vein apieces, which will be within a Week ; when you have tyed up the Vein, as is shewed you, then put into the hole or Wound a little piece of Butter and Salt mixed together, to heal it up : after all this, before you let down his Leg, ( in case you do it standing ) but whether you do it standing or lying this you must do: Take a Nail-rod at the same time, and make it with a thick edge bending or hook'd back ; heat it hot, and make in the bent of the leg with it one long strike downwards, sear it besides the Sinews till the skin look yellow, make the searing thus in the bent of the leg besides the Sinews, but not upon the Sinews, as the foregoing Figure shews you, and thus you must sear him on the inside and on the outside of the Knee ; where you see the swelling appear, there you must sear him likewise with one Line and two crosses, cross it in this manner. After you have thus seared it, then apply this Charge ; A quarter of a pint of Brandy-wine, or for want thereof, a quarter of a pint of *Aqua vite*, and a penny-worth of Crown-sope : boyl them together till they come to a white Salve, then lay it all over the swelling as hot as you can, with a flat-stick, and heat it well in with a Bar of Iron : once laying on this Charge is enough ; when this hath lain on a Week, then ride him, whether he halt or not, so



you ride him moderately: then take an ounce of the Oyl of Swallows, and rub it well in with your hand upon the Sinews of the bent of the leg, to retch and give liberty to them; use of this Oyl every four or five days, and in four or five times dressing it will be a cure. After he comes from work or riding at any time, and his legs be washt and dry, then rub on this Oyl upon the bent of his leg, and upon the Sinews: you need not heat it in now with a hot Iron, but rub it well in with the palm of your hand, and within a fortnights time the Blood-Spavin will not be seen, and the swelling will be quite gone: If you take a Blood-spavin at the first coming out of a young Horse, then do but fire it lightly, and lay the former Charge to, and in once dressing it will be a compleat cure. *Proved.*

CLXXIII. *For an old Cold.*

**I**F you see cause, take blood from the Neck-vein, otherwise not; then instead of giving him Oats, give him Wheat-bran boyled in water after this manner, *viz.* Set a Kettle over the fire almost full of water, and when it begins to boyl, put in your Bran, and let it boyl a full quarter of an hour, then take it off, and let it stand till it be almost cold, and about four or five of the clock in the Morning, give it him as hot as he can eat it, and for his drink give him the same water, and at Night give him Oats and White-water to drink, and let him be covered and littered up warm. If it be in Summer, let not the stable be too hot, for that will take away his stomach, and make him faint; And when you give him his water at Night, alwaies give him as much of this powder as an Eggshell will hold amongst his

his Oats, to which you must keep him eight days together, or longer if you shall see cause; the boyled Bran is that which drieth up all his corrupt and gross humours, which was the cause of his cold: Now the powder is this, *viz.* Take of Cummin-seeds, Fenugreek, Sileris Montani, otherwise called, Sifilers, Nutmegs, Cloves, Ginger, Linseed, of each of these two ounces, Quick-brimstone six ounces, make all these into fine powder, and mix them all well together; it must be given him in his Oats the quantity that was prescribed before; but he must first be watered with White-water; and then presently let him be well rubbed all over, and cloathed and littered warm, and an hour before you give him his Oats, put into his Rack a little sweet Wheat-straw, and let him eat thereof an hour or better, and then and not before give him his Oats mixed with this powder, which having eaten, give him Hay at your pleasure, and with doing thus his Cold will be gone in a short time, and the sooner if you air him an hour before Sun-set, and an hour after Sun-rising, if the Sun shine mark that; keep up his stomach with White-wine and Honey, and the Cordials, or with what else you think best of.

*Proved.*

Now, if this cold bring with it a violent cough, as is often seen, then use this Receipt following.

**CLXXIV.** *For a Cold with a violent Cough.*

**F**irst, give him the Wheat-bran boyled, together with the Powder, with his Oats, as is directed in the foregoing Receipt, but not above three or four days, or till you see he hath purged sufficiently, for that the said Powder dispersed the corrupt and



gross humours that are in his body, which do occasion the Cough; and when you perceive that he hath purged sufficiently, keep him notwithstanding to his White-water, which is no other thing than water made hot in a Kettle, and then put in some Wheat-bran, or Barley-meal; let him eat the Bran as hot as he will, and drink the Water a little warm: But always an hour before you water him, take a stick a little bigger than your thumb, of well-nigh a foot long, and wrap a linnen cloth about it four or five times, first dipped in Oyl of Bayes, and put into his mouth; and with some leather thong or piece of small cord, fasten it to either end of the stick, and so fasten it over his Ears like the head-stall of a Bridle, like as Smiths do when they burn a Horse for a Lampra's; Let him drink with this stick thus in his mouth, and so stand with it an hour after at the least, that he may lick and suck up the said Oyl; and after the three or four days are expired, and that you see he hath purged sufficiently, which is a little before mentioned; then when you give him the Oats, give him amongst them this other Powder following, *viz.* Fennel-seeds four ounces, Fennugreek two ounces, and Cardamum one ounce; beat them but grossly, or else he will blow them away when he eats his Oats: put one spoonful into his Oats, and keep him warm, and use him as is prescribed in the foregoing Receipt, and you will find it to do him much good.

*Proved.*

CLXXV. *A rare Receipt to cause an Horse to vomit.*

**T**AKE two of the greatest Roots of Polypodium as you can get from the Oak, wash and scrape them very clean, and tie it to his Snaffle or Bit, then let it be steeped in Oyl of Spike a whole night, and in the morning fasting, put on his Bridle with the Roots tied to his Bit, and ride him softly and fairly an hour or better with it in his mouth; and if he be troubled with any Rheumatick or Flegmatick humour, or with any cold or filthy matter, which may any way pester, clog or annoy his stomach, this very thing will force him to vent and vomit it up at his mouth or nose, and it will cause him to cough and sneeze much, that you shall see him to send forth a great abundance of filth, and evil slimy matter from his stomach and head, and in a short time he will become very clean in his body, for this will both refine his blood, and exhaust all the waterish humours in such sort, as by temperate ordering of him, and doing as heretofore is prescribed, you may keep him a long time sound, perfect, and serviceable; and this you may give to an Horse newly taken from Grass, or to any other Horse that hath taken a Cold, or to any other filthy, foul, foggy or purvie Horse whatsoever: And this upon trial, upon all occasions before mentioned, you shall find to be most admirable; this being done, I conceive it to be very good to give them White-wine and Honey, and the Cordial formerly set down.

*Proved.*

CLXXVI. *For a Curb.*

**T**His Curb always groweth upon the back-part of the heel of the knee of the hinder-leg, in a hard substance; I shall give no more signs, for it is easie to be seen: The remedy is this, first tie up the contrary leg as you do for a Blood-spavin, then with an hot Iron sear it length-ways down his Leg upon the Curb, till the skin look yellow; then draw your hot Iron cross it, as you did for a Blood-spavin, in two or three places, then presently take an Horse-nail and drive it through a stick, so that the point of the nail may come a little through the stick, the breadth of a straw, or a little more: then set the point of the nail to the fired places, and strike it some ten or twenty times, according as the burning goes in several places, and as you see occasion: then take a handful or two of Salt, and rub it well in with your hand to stop the Blood, and half an hour after, wipe the Salt off, and apply the Charge of Soap and Brandy hot on, and heat it well in with a bar of Iron; and as your Iron cools, flake it over it to dry it in the better: let the Charge lye on till it come off of it self; you may ride him every day after three or four days, in the mean time, let him stand in the Stable.

*Proved.*

CLXXVII. *For a Quitter-bone, Old or New.*

**T**His Quitter-bone always grows just above the top of the Hoof on the hinder Foot, and sometimes on the Instep just above the Hoof on the side of the Foot; but be it in any place, this is the cure: First, take up the Vein in the small of the leg; if  
the

the Quitter-bone be on the inside of the leg above the Hoof, then take up the Vein on the inside of the leg: If it be on the outside of the leg, then take up the Vein on the outside; this is the way to further the cure, and make all sure by taking up the Vein which does feed it. You may see how to take up a Vein, if you look into the Receipt for a Blood-spavin. For the taking up of a Vein is all alike, be it where it will be. After you have taken up the Vein let it bleed well, and put into the wound some Butter and Salt: Then with a little Towe or Hards, or a Linnen-cloth wound about your Instrument's end, search the Quitter-bone to the bottom, and where you see the matter come out, there put in your Instrument; when you have searched the wound and made it clean, put into it a piece of white Arsenick as big as a small bean, and put a little Tow after it, and lay a little Tow upon the top of the Quitter-bone, with a Linnen-cloth next, and a Woollen-cloth over all, tyed on fast, that it may not come off; then tye him up to the Rack with a strong Halter one day, till the anguish of the Arsenick be over, for fear he come at it with his mouth; let the Arsenick lye in forty hours, then take out the Hards, and you shall see the hole in the Quitter-bone look very black, and swelled more than it was before: It is the effects of Arsenick, therefore you need not fear, but as soon as you have pulled off the Clothes and Hards from the place, you may put his Foot into a payl of cold water for a quarter of an hour, and let it soak; or if the River be near that you can lead him into it, if it be clear water, so that no Sand or Dirt get into the wound, and let him stand and soak his Leg there for a quarter of an hour, for his Leg must be once a day soaked,

either

either in a pail of clean water or in the River, for a week together, take off his wet hard Clothes, and tye on dry ones, this is all you have to do till you see the Core of the Quitter-bone come out, which when you see, make this Medicine to Heal it up: Take a penny-worth of good Honey, put it into a Pipkin, and when it begins to be hot, put in a penny-worth of Verdigrease, and three or four Spoonfuls of white-wine-Vinegar; boyl them all together for half an hour, then take it off the fire, and when it is cold take a little fine Tow and dip into it, and put it into the wound, and lay a little dry Tow or Hards over that, and a Linnen-cloth over them, and bind them on with a string, and so dress it once a day till you see it begin to heal, and then dress it but once in two days, and as you see it heal dress it the fewer times till it be whole: There will be a little space bare where no hair will come, put in Arsenick but once; and although you tye him up to the Rack because his mouth should not come to the Arsenick, yet give him meat for all that. Do but remember these two last Cautions, and you need not question the cure, for it will be speedy.

*Proved.*

Now suppose you meet with a Quitter-bone that hath been a long time in other Farrier's hands, that have so corroded and poysoned it that it is much swelled about the Pastern and Leg: In this case, you must first take up the Vein on that side the Leg that the Quitter-bone grows on, to keep the humor back that feeds it, then put in as much Arsenick as a Bean, as you were directed before, and so doing as it is there exprest, soaking his Leg as you are therein taught, and when the Core is out, heal it with the same Salve that is there prescribed: but if there

there grows proud flesh in it whilst you are a healing of it, then scald it with Butter and Salt, and that will keep the proud flesh down: An old hurt in the Foot may come to be a Quitter-bone, and break out above the Hoof, but a Quitter-bone will never break out in the Sole of the Foot. Except you take up the Vein, a Quitter-bone is a very hard thing to cure. After the Core is come out, it will not be amiss before you go about to heal it, to wash the sore well with White-wine-Vinegar, and then to wash it with the water mentioned in Receipt XXXVIII. and then apply the healing Salve mentioned in the foregoing Receipt.

CLXXVIII. *A Preparation before you give the Black Drink for the Glanders, in the next following Receipt.*

**F**irst take Blood from him, if you do find it gross or phlegmatick, for otherwise he cannot possibly mend; then instead of Oats give him every morning about 4 or 5 a clock Wheat-bran prepared, for four or five days together, and the water to drink that the Bran is sodden in, as you may see in the Receipt for an old Cold, which is to qualifie and dry up the moist and bad humors abounding in him; and then let him blood in the Neck, if you have not before. The next day rake him with your hand, and then give him this Glister: Make a decoction of Mallows one pint and a half, and put into it four ounces of fresh Butter, and of Sallet-oil a quarter of a pint: administer it Blood-warm, and then with a strap of Leather tyed to his Tail and put between his legs, and the other end fastened to the Surstingle, so strait, that the Tail may be close



close to his Tewel or Fundament, that he cannot purge till it be loosened: This done, mount his back and ride him gently an easie Trot or Foot-pace for half an hour; then set him up cloathed and littered, with the Bit in his mouth three hours, during which time he will purge kindly; then give him White-water and Hay, and at night a few Oats, for he must be kept to a spare diet: The next day mix well together the powder of Brimstone and fresh Butter, and anoint all along two Goose-feathers, and run a thred through either of their Quills ends; that you may fasten the thred to the top of the headstall of his Bridle, and run them up as high as you can into each nostril, and so ride him an hour or two, and this will purge his head and lungs, and cause him to send forth much filthy matter; but when you set him up, take them out, and an hour after give him Hay and White-water, and Bran prepared, which he should have before you ride him abroad: The next day give him his Glister again, and let him rest for that day, but ordered in all things as before; the next day use the Goose-feathers again, and order him as you did before: And all this is but to prepare him for this after-Drink that followeth, but you must observe to keep him always warm, and let him be ever fasting and empty, before you give him any Physick, and air him evening and morning if the Sun shine, or the weather be warm or calm: Then three days after give him this Drink following, which is called the black Drink.

CLXXIX. *The Black drink for the Glanders.*

**T**AKE new-made Chamber-ly, and of the best and strongest White-wine-vinegar of each half a pint, then take of Mustard-seed two or three spoonfuls, and make Mustard thereof with Vinegar, and grind it well, then put your Vinegar and Chamber-lye to the Mustard, and stir them well together; then take of Tar and Bay-salt of each alike, as much as may suffice, incorporate them well together, and convey so much thereof as two or three Eggs-hells will hold, their meat being first taken out; having prepared these things, keep him overnight to a very spare diet, and the next morning take and ride him first, till he begin to sweat, then give him the Eggs-hells filled with Tar and Salt, as before prescribed, and as soon as he hath taken that, give him with a Horn the afore-named Drink made of Chamber-lye, Vinegar and Mustard, all at the mouth, except two small hornfuls which must be poured into his Nostrils; which when he hath taken, ride him again as much as you did before, set him up, and clothe and litter him warm, and so let him stand upon the Bit till three or four a Clock: then unbit, and give him a warm Mash, and order him in all things, as is usual for Horses taking Physick. Give him this Medicine or Drink every other third day, if the Horse be strong, and if he be weak in Body, once in three or four days: And this is an infallible cure in three or four times giving, if it be rightly given, though he be far spent.

*Proved.*

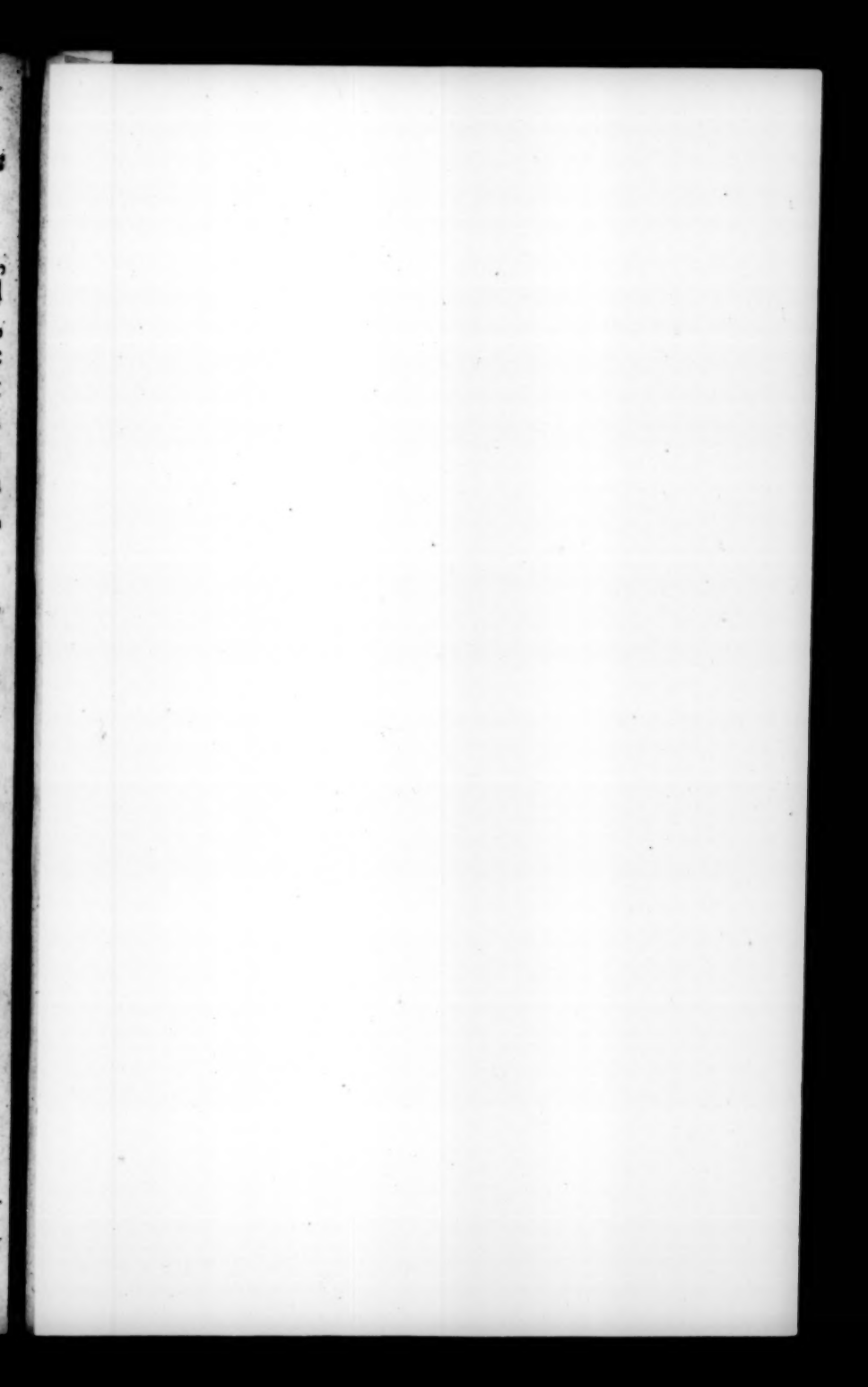
CLXXX.

CLXXX. *To cure the Glanders running at the Nose :  
Also all colds and Rheums.*

**F**irst observe this, always when you give him Oats, put some Honey to them, and rub them very well together betwixt your hands : continue to do thus, till he leave running at the Nose. This is one of the best and most certain Cordials that I know, for it disperseth all the Flegm and Choler, it also purgeth the Head and Brain, it purifieth the Blood, it venteth evil humours, it causeth a good digestion, and freeth a Horse from Glanders, Colds, Catarrhs, Rheums, running at the Nose, &c. *Proved.*

CLXXXI. *For a Fistula or Gangrene in the foot, by reason of some Channel-Nail, which hath lain long and deep in the foot, that breaks out above the hoof, and causeth the sole of the foot to come out, and causeth the leg and Pastern to swell very much.*

**I**F this Nail cause the sole of the foot to come out, and do break out above the hoof, and cause the pastern and leg to swell, but in case the sole of the foot be not come out, then take it out as you were directed formerly, by girting the foot-lock hard ; and when you have taken out the sole of the foot as you are there directed, search the wound with a little Tow at the Instruments end, to see which way and how far the Channel-nail went ; when you see where the holes are, drop in ten or twelve drops of the Oyl of Turpentine,, and take a little fine Tow, or a little Lint at your Instruments end, and dip it in the Turpentine, and put it in Tent-ways : then over this Tent lay to the bottom of the hoof a handful of Nettle-



t  
v  
r  
h  
t  
r  
a  
a  
t  
t  
P  
p  
b  
V  
th  
th  
p  
w  
fo  
ch  
it  
bo  
th  
lo  
w

Nettle-tops, and a handful of Salt well beaten together, stuff his foot well with Tow, and let it lye on twenty four hours, and ever when you dress it take off the shooe, and when you have dressed it tack on the shooe again: dress it thus once a day with a Tent dipt in Turpentine, and laid to the sole first, and then the Nettles and Salt over that, till you see the sole come on a little, and when you see it a little grown, then apply the Poultis following in this manner (but not before) and lay over the Poultis, Hards or Tow, and over the Tow a piece of leather, and over the leather splinters of wood with his shooe taken off, and set on again as you were shewed in another place; let him stand dry and in the house till he be whole, which will be in a few days, the Poultis must lye on the first dressing twenty four hours, the second dressing forty eight hours, the third dressing forty eight hours, and so continue till the sole of the foot be grown firm and strong again. The Poultis is thus made: Take half a pint of salt Beef or Pork-brine, and put it into a Skillet, a quarter of a pound of Kitchin-stuff-grease; and when you have boyled these two a pretty while together, put some Wheat-bran to it, and make it not too thick nor too thin; when you have taken out his sole, and untied the Cord about his Pastern, if it bleed much, then put a handful of Salt into the bottom of the foot, with Tow, Hards or Flax, between the sole of the foot and the shooe, and splinters and a piece of leather over it, to keep it in: at twenty four hours take it off, and lay on the Nettles and Salt, as you were before directed, but no otherwise. Thus much for the cure of the sole of the foot. But mark what followeth, which belongeth to the foregoing Receipt; which is, when the nail in the foot doth not onely

Q

cause



cause the sole of the foot to come out, but also breaketh out above the hoof, and causeth a Gangrene or swelling in the Pastern, and so up the leg: In this case, after you have searched it with a little fine Tow or Hards, with your Instrument's end, then drop into the hole a few drops of the Oyl of Turpentine, and after that put in a Tent dipt in the Oyl of Turpentine into the hole as far as you can, and immediately apply the Poultis, laid upon a large linnen-cloth, to the swelling in the Pastern, and up the leg so far as the swelling goes, and bind it close to with another cloth that it may not come off: tye him up to the Rack for seven or eight hours, that he may not pull it off with his mouth; let it lye on the first dressing twenty four hours, and for the other dressings the time you were directed before, till the swelling be down, and the sore be whole. Always put in a Tent dipt in the Oyl of Turpentine, before you lay this Poultis to, or any other thing: If the hoof come off and it swell, and break out above the hoof, if all these happen together at once, you must observe the distinct directions. The cure of that in the sole of the foot, from that which breaks out above the hoof, and apply each Cure to each Disease; In this case the Poultis must be first applied above the hoof, because when the sole of the foot is taken out, you must not lay the Poultis to the sole of the foot till it be a little grown: and further, with the great pain and continual holding up his foot from the ground, his Sinews in the bent of his leg will be shrunk; to remedy which, use the Oyl of Swallows, as you may see for a Blood-spavin in Receipt CLXXII. But if you cannot get the Oyl of Swallows, if his sinews be knit or stiff, then rub in some Trotters-Oyl, which is made of Sheeps feet, it is to be had at the Tripe-houses,

ses ; but for want of either of these, boyl some Hogs-grease and *Aqua vite* together, and rub it in with your hand cold, which Receipt is incomparable for shrunk sinews.

*Proved.*

CLXXXII. *For a strain in the Coffin-joynt, or a Sive-bone in the Socket of the Hoof.*

FOR remedy, Take off the shooe, and then pare the bottom of the Foot as thin as you can, till the blood do almost appear ; you shall know in what place the strain is in, by taking the Foot in your hand, and wrying it to you and from you : if it be there, he will shrink at it much when you thus turn his Foot ; when you find where it is, make this Poultis and lay it to hot. Take a pint of powder-Beef or Pork-brine, and a quarter of a pound of Kitchen-stuff-grease, put them into a skillet, and boyl them together half an hour, then take some Wheat-bran and put to it, make a Poultis thereof, not too thick nor too thin, then set on the shooe again, and put a good quantity of this Poultis as hot as you can into the sole of the Foot, then stuff the sole with Towe or Hards, and either splinter it in with a flat stick, or with a piece of a sole of leather, to keep it in, and let it lye on forty eight hours, then take a long linnen cloth and spread the rest of the Poultis scalding hot all about the top of the Hoof, the Pastern, and up the leg so far as the swelling goes, and let it lye on 48 hours: at the end of which take it off and lay on another, and let it lye on as long, and so likewise a third or fourth, till you see him go sound, which will be in a very few days, and after a weeks time he will not complain of it : If you have occasion to ride him, after the third dressing you may ride

him eight or ten miles moderately; a little before you set him up wash his legs, and when they are dry take off his shoe, and lay the Poultis to as before: This Poultis is nothing differing from that in the Receipt before. *Proved.*

CLXXXIII. *A Purge for filthy Slime, and to carry away the peccant Humours which Surfeits have ingendred in the Body.*

**T**AKE a pint of White-wine, or a quart of new Ale, which you can best get, as much of the best powder of Mechoacan as you can take up with a shilling at four times, put them together and give it luke-warm, ride him gently a mile or two, and set him up warm, and let him stand upon the Bit five or six hours: then give him a warm Malt, and half an hour after give him Oats and Bran mingled together a little at a time, wet his Hay that night: This will make the slime to come away in great flakes upon the Dung; if after this his stomach fail, then give him White-wine and Honey, and the Cordial: This is a very rare purge, but before you give it, use the directions in the Receipt next following.

*Proved.*

CLXXXIV. *For an Horse that is sick and Surfeited of Colds, whether in Winter or in Summer.*

**F**IRST let him Blood, then give him this Purge afterwards: Take of Aloes Succatrina two ounces made into fine powder; then make it up into Pills with fresh or sweet Butter, and give it the Horse over night, he having been kept fasting the whole day before, and instead of Hay, straw, or any other meats

meats hard of digestion, two or three days before you give him this Purge, or any other Purge, let his meat be either Wheat or Rye-bran, as you may see in a Receipt or two a little before, or you may give him Bread made on purpose with Beans, Pease, and some Rye in it, or else Oats well sifted both dry and sweet, and let his Drink be White-water onely, which is nothing else but Wheat-bran sodden in water; the next day in the morning early, after he hath taken the Pills, give him either a sweet Mash, or for want thereof White-water, for that will make his Pills to work the more kindly that day; then let him fast till night, during which time he will purge freely; then at night give him White-water, after Oats and Bran, and give him for all night Hay sprinkled with water. If he be strong bodyed, it may be he will not purge the first day, but the second day be sure he will; in the mean time give him Mash, White-Bran boyled, and White-water or clean Oats, and after his purging keep him warm and well littered, keep him to White-water for two or three days after, or longer, and when you give him cold water let it not be with excess. This is an excellent purge.

*Proved.*

CLXXXV. *For a strain in the Pastern of an Horse.*

TAKE of the grounds of Beer called Heild, that is, when all the Beer is drawn quite off, Hens-dung, Nerve-oyle, and fresh Grease that never had Salt in it, make a Souldis thereof and lay it to: This is admirable for a strain in the Pastern or Foot-lock, and will make a speedy cure.

*Proved.*

CLXXXVI. *For an Horse-Cough.*

**T**AKE five or six Eggs, and lay them in sharp White-wine-Vinegar, till the shells be somewhat soft, then take his Tongue in your hand, and put them down his throat one after another : Give them fasting, and let him neither eat nor drink for five or six hours after, ride him a mile or two after you have given it him, give him warm water to drink for once, and keep him warm. This will cure him forthwith.

*Proved.*

CLXXXVII. *A suppository to supple the Guts, to dissolve and send forth all dry and hot Excrements.*

**F**IRST Rake him, then take a great Candle of four in the pound, and cut off three Inches at the smaller end, then anoint the other part being the bigger end, with Sallet-oyl or fresh Butter, and so put it up into his Fundament, then hold his Tail to his Tewel half an hour, or tye it close to his Tewel with a strap of Leather, and fasten it to his Suffingle, and in half an hours time it will be dissolved : then let loose his Tail and leap his back, and trot him up and down till he do begin to empty and purge himself, for by this means it will work the more kindly : this is the most gentle of all suppositories.

*Proved.*

## CLXXXVIII.

CLXXXVIII. *Another Suppository to be given, that you dare not without peril of his life give him any thing else inwardly : Then give him this.*

**T**AKE of common Honey six ounces, of Salnitre one ounce and a half, of Wheat-flour and of Aniseeds in fine powder, of each one ounce ; boyl all these together to a stiff thickness, and so make it into Suppositories : anoint these as you did the former, and your hand also, and so put it up into his Fundament the length of your hand ; then tye his Tail between his legs, for an half hour, in which time the Suppository will be dissolved, then ride him and order him as before. This is very good, especially in case of Surfeits or inward sickness : rake him first, and keep him warm. *Proved.*

CLXXXIX. *A Suppository to purge flegm.*

**T**AKE a piece of Castle-sope, pare it and bring it into the fashion of a Suppository, put it into his Fundament, and order him as before. *Proved.*

CXC. *A Suppository to purge Choler.*

**T**AKE Savin as much as will suffice, and stamp it to Mash, and stamp with it Stavesacre and Salt, of each two ounces, boyl them in common Honey, as much as will suffice to make it thick, and so make it up into Suppositories, and administer one of them like as you are before shewn, and order him accordingly,



CXC. *A Suppository to purge Melancholy.*

**T**ake a red Onion and pill it, and jagg it cross-ways with your knife, and so administer it, and order him as before.

CXCII. *Another Suppository.*

**T**ake a pint of common Honey, and boyl it till it be thick, and make it up into Suppositories as it cooleth; and administer it as before, and order him also in the like manner: This Suppository purgeth evil humours, it cooleth and comforteth the body very much, and causeth a good appetite to meat.

*Proved.*

CXCIII. *Directions for Suppositories.*

**F**irst observe this: When at any time you do administer either Potions, Glisters, or Suppositories, you must do it in a Morning fasting, except necessity urge the contrary.

Secondly, you must not at those times suffer him to drink cold water, nor not with exercise, but either sweet Mash or White-water.

Thirdly, it is very needful before you administer any of these, that you Rake him; and be sure you keep him warm.

A Suppository is but a preparative for a Glisten or Purge, to make way that they may purge the better.

CXCIV.

CXCIV. *To kill Worms.*

**T**AKE Bears-foot and Savin, Lavender-cotton, the flour of Brimstone, give it him in sweet-wort; it will kill the Worms, and turn them into slime; Ask for the powder of Caroline at the Apothecaries, it is as admirable a thing to kill worms as can be, you may give three or four penny-worth at a time, in a pint and a half of sweet Wort. It is a very safe thing. *Proved.*

CXCV. *To purge by Graſs in Summer.*

**I**F your Horſe be ſurſeited, or hath been over-laboured the Winter before, then turn him out when the Graſs is in the beſt heart: Now that graſs that will purge moſt and beſt, is a new-mown Meadow, for that will rake his Guts very well, nor will he in ſuch a place gather fleſh; therefore let him go there not above fourteen or eighteen days, and then put him into ſome other Paſture, where the Graſs hath not been touched with a Syth, and there he will belly well, and in a ſhort time recover much fleſh, and be very fat and luſty. This purging will ſcower him bravely, and ſend away all ill humours and ſurſeits, and eaſe his limbs marvelouſly well, and do his legs and feet much good, and refine his corrupt blood, and make him nimble and full of ſpirit. Alſo to mow green Rye before it be eared is moſt whoſome, for it ſcowereth, cleanſeth, and cooleth the body very much; ſo do the leaves of Sallow, and the leaves of the Elm-tree.

## CXCVI.

**CXCVI.** *A Glister for a sick, surfeited, diseased Horse.*

**I**F your Horse be newly taken from Grass, and that you hold it needful his body should be cleansed from bad humours, which either his Grass or former surfeits might bring: First Rake him, and then give him this Glister following, *viz.* Take Mallows three handfuls, Marsh-Mallow-roots cleansed and bruised two handfuls, Violet-leaves two handfuls, Flax-seed three spoonfuls, and as many of the Cloves of white Lilly-roots, as you may easily hold in your hand; boyl all these in fair water from a gallon to a wine-quart; then strain it, and put thereto one ounce of Sena, which must be infused or steeped in the Liquor three hours standing upon the hot Embers, then put thereto half a pint of Sallet-Oyl, and then administer it Glister-wise blood-warm, and cause him to keep it half an hour or longer if you can: and the best time to give this Glister, is three or four days before the full or change of the Moon; but if occasion be, you may give it any other time: this Glister is to be given to a foggy fat Horse, which otherwise cannot be kept clean. It purgeth the Guts abundantly, and it is chiefly to be given an Horse that is newly taken from grass. And the next day after you have given him this Glister, give him this Drink following.

**CXCVII.** *A Purge.*

**T**Ake the strongest Ale-wort one quart, of Honey a quarter of a pint, of London-Treacle two ounces; mix and brew them all together, and give it him blood-warm; then keep him upon the bit six hours after,

after, warm clothed and well littered, and give him a sweet Mash, and White-water, and Rack him with sweet Wheat-straw, Oats, and Bran, this both purgeth and comforteth; two or three days after, give him this Drink following.

CXCVIII. *Another Purge.*

**T**AKE a pint of White-wine, and put into it one ounce of Sena, and let it steep all night; next morning betimes strain it, and put into it one ounce of the best Aloes made into fine powder, half an ounce of Agarick, and a spoonful of the powder of Liquorish; mix and brew them all together, and so give it to your Horse blood-warm, and ride him gently a quarter of an hour after it, and so set him up warm, well clothed and littered, and let no cold air come to him, nor let him eat nor drink of six hours after; and at night give him a sweet Mash, or White-water, and let his Rack-meat be sweet Wheat-straw, Oats and Bran; the next day let him blood, and prick him in the third furrow of his mouth, and if his blood be bad, take two quarts from him, but if good, scarce a quart: keep him warm, and give him sweet Malbes or White-water, and put into his Drink either the powder of Brimstone or of Fennugreek, or Turmeric, or of Elecampane, one or more together, according as he will be brought to like and take them; which being well mixed, put thereof into his drink a spoonful at a time. And this is very good to cool the blood, purge Choler, and other peccant humours, and to purifie and refine the blood. And this is not onely good for Horses newly taken from grass, but for other sick, surfeited, diseased Horses.

CXCIX. *Another Purge.*

**T**AKE one ounce and a quarter of Gentian, slice it thin. boyl it in a quart of Beer till it come to a pint, and give it him blood-warm; It will make him very sick for a short time, but you need not fear, for it will do him much good: let him fast after it five or six hours, and then give him a Mash or White-water, and the next day give him this following:

Mingle Honey with his Oats, and rub the Honey and Oats well together between your hands, and continue thus doing till you see him quite cured, which will be when he hath done running at the Nose. This is one of the best Cordials I know, for it disperfeth all Flegm and Choler, it purgeth the head and Brain, it purifieth the blood, it venteth evil humours, it causeth good digestion, and freeth an Horfe from Glanders, Colds, Catarrhs, Rheums, running at the Nose, and the like, as you may see set down before, which is the same with this; this and the purge before going you must give one after another. And for the Honey and his Oats mixed together, I conceive you may give them in other cases; as when an Horfe is troubled with cold Rheums, running at the Nose, Glanders, Flegm, or Choler, or such like.

CC. *Of Glifters, and their use.*

**A** Glifter is given as a preparative to a purging drink, and a Glifter by cleansing the Guts refresheth the Vital parts, and prepareth the way before; wherefore I advise every Farrier before he give

a drink, whether purging or otherwise, if the Horse be not at that time soluble in body, that after Blood-letting, the next day he give a Glister: this done he may the better give what is requisite; otherwise if he give the Drink before the Glister, he may stir and provoke the evil humours, which by reason of much costiveness and Wind, and other impediments in his Guts, do attempt to make their passage by a contrary way, which cannot be done without great hazard to the life of the Beast. I therefore advise, if the Beast be costive and bound in his body, to give a Suppository or Glister first, and after, his purging drink.

CCI. *What a Decoction is.*

**A** Decoction is a Broth made of divers Herbs, as Mallows, Marsh-Mallows, Pellitory, Camomile, and sometime white Lilly-roots, and such-like things, which we do boyl in water to a third part; and sometimes we use instead of Herbs and Water, to take the fat of Beef-broth, or the broth of Sheeps-head, Milk, Whey, or some such kind of liquor.

CCH. *What quantity of Broth or Decoction is put in to make a Glister.*

**F**OR the quantity, we do administer according to the Age, strength and greatness of the Horse; for if he be of a strong and able body, of large growth and stature, fat and lusty, in this case we put in three pints; but if he be of a small growth, weak, sick, feeble or lean, in this case a quart is enough; we use to put in half a pint of Oyl, of Salt two or three drams, and sometimes we put in Verjuice, and sometimes Honey, as we see cause. Drugs we use, as Scna,  
Castia,



Cassia, Agarick, Anniseeds, Oyl of Dill, Oyl of Camomile, Oyl of Violets, Sugar-candy, and such like.

CCIII. *For the quantity of Drugs put into a Glister.*

**F**OR the quantity of Drugs, you ought not to exceed the quantity of three ounces in one Glister at the most, neither put in above four ounces of Butter, and let it be but Blood-warm when you administer it.

CCIV. *What time is fit for an Horse to keep his Glister.*

**W**HEN you give it him, let him be empty, and before he do receive it, Rake him: After you have given it him, let him keep it half an hour, it will do it the more good; the longer he keep it the more good it will do him: hold his Tail close to his Fundament all the while.

CCV. *The length of the Glister-pipe.*

**T**HE best Instrument wherein to give an Horse a Glister, is a Pipe made of purpose, which ought to be twelve Inches in the shank, which must also be put home: And when the Glister is put into his body, then draw away the Pipe by degrees, not all at once.

CCVI. *A Glister for a Horse that is bound in his body and cannot dung.*

**T**AKE the fat of Beef-broth (if he be sick, weak and lean) a pint and a half is enough, if he be big, fat and lusty, you may put in two or three pints; put  
to

to it half a pint of *English-Honey*, and two drams of white Salt : mix them well together, and administer it Glister-wise Blood-warm ; then clap his Tail close to his Tewel for half an hour or longer, and if then it do not work, as I am confident it will, ride him up and down a gentle trot for half an hour more, but not till he sweat ; then set him up warm clothed and littered, and let him stand upon the Bit four or five hours, in which time he will purge kindly : then unbit him, and give him sweet Hay, and an hour after that, give him White-water, and he may drink any cold water in a day or two after ; and this is the best cure for this Malady. This Glister will open and loosen the body, bring away all offensive humours, remove all obstructions ingendred in the body by means of excessive heat ; it cleanseth the Guts, and purgeth away all stinky substance. And this you will find to be the best remedy for a Horse that is costive and bound in his body, and that cannot dung. This hath been often proved.

CCVII. *For another Glister.*

**T**AKE two handfuls of Melilot, two handfuls of Pellitory : if you can get neither of them, then take two handfuls of Camomile, but Pellitory is the best if it can be gotten ; boyl any one of these in a Decoction of water to a third part, then add to it of Sallet-oyl and of Verjuce of each half a pint, of Honey four ounces, of Cassia two ounces, mix all these together, and administer it luke-warm, and order him as in the first Glister. It will open the gut and body very well, and will take from him all hurtful and offensive humors. It will carry away all Spungy matter. It will allay the biliousness and sharp-

sharpness of humours, cleanse inward Ulcers, and much refresh and comfort the Vital spirits; But if you find that by giving too great a quantity your Horse purgeth and scowreth longer or more violently than you think is meet and good, or for fear it should stir up in him more bad humours upon the sudden, then you may easily allay it with this following Glister.

CCVIII. *A Glister restraining to stop looseness.*

**T**AKE of the Decoction in the Glister aforegoing a pint, and put thereto as much Cow's Milk as it cometh warm from the Cow, and put also thereto the yolks of three new-laid Eggs, well beaten and mixed together, and give it Blood-warming. This Glister is onely to be given to a Horse that is very laxative, or doth empty himself too much, which is occasioned oft-times by over-much debility or want of strength, or when nature is very much offended: You may give this Glister as often as need shall require, and till you see his looseness stop.

CCIX. *A Glister for a fat foul-bodied Horse, that is newly taken from Grass, or for any sick, surfeited, diseased Horse.*

**T**AKE three handfuls of Marsh-mallow-roots cleaned and bruised, Violet-leaves of each two handfuls, Flax-seeds three spoonfuls, the Cloves of white Lilly-roots a small handful; boyl all these together in fair water, from a gallon to a Wine-quart; then strain it, and put thereto of Sena one ounce, which must be steeped in the Liquor three hours standing upon the hot Embers, then put thereto half a pint of Sal-

Sallet-oyl, and being blood-warm administer it Glister-wise, causing him to keep it above half an hour : And the best time to give this, is three or four days before the full or change of the Moon, yet it may be given with much benefit at any other time. This Glister purgeth the Guts abundantly, and is chiefly to be given to an Horse that is newly taken from Grass,

CCX. *A Glister for Melancholy.*

**T**AKE of Whey a quart, of Anniseeds in fine powder two penny-worth, the leaves of Mallows two handfuls : boyl all these together till the Mallows be soft, then strain it, and put thereto of sweet Butter four ounces, and when the Butter is melted, give it Glister-wise blood-warm. This purgeth Melancholy, it causeth a good appetite which before was wanting ; it refresheth the dulled Spirits, and causeth a good Digestion, if the Horse be kept warm and well tended.

CCXI. *A Glister to be given in case of a desperate Sickness : It helpeth Fevers ; is good against the Pestilence and all languishing Diseases, most excellent against surfeits either by provender or otherwise : and will give great strength in a short time, if it be rightly made and carefully given.*

**T**AKE of the Oyl of Dill, Oyl of Camomile, Oyl of Violets, and Cassia, of each half an ounce, of brown Sugar-candy in powder three ounces : Then take of Mallow-leaves a handful, and boyl them first to a Decoction in fair water, then strain it, and put thereto the before-named Ingredients, and give it  
R blood-

blood-warm : This is most sovereign to be given in case of a desperate sickness, and for all the diseases afore-mentioned.

CCXII. *A Glister for the Pestilence and all Fevers.*

**T**AKE half an ounce of the pulp of Coloquintida the seeds and rind taken away; of Gum-dragant three quarters of an ounce; boyl all these in three quarts of water to a quart, with Centory and Wormwood of each half an handful, and a quarter of an ounce of Castorium, strain it and dissolve it into the Decoction of Gerologundium three ounces, and of white salt three drams, and of Sallet-oyl half a pint, and then administer it Glister-wise blood-warm, this hath been often proved to be most excellent good for the diseases above-mentioned.

CCXIII. *A Lenitive Glister.*

**T**AKE the Decoction of Mallows, and put to it either of fresh Butter four ounces, or of Sallet-oyl half a pint, and give it Glister-wise blood-warm; this is the gentlest Glister of any before prescribed, for it is both a loosener, and a great cooler of the body, and doth infinitely ease pain. Also it is good for Convulsions or Cramps, and most singular against costiveness, proceeding from any sickness or surfeit by Provender or Foundering in the body.

CCXIV. *A Glister for the Cholick or any sickness or Gripings in the Guts or Belly.*

**T**AKE salt water or new-made brine two pints, dissolve therein a pretty quantity of Soap, and administer it Glister-wise, blood-warm; this is averred to be the most excellent for the Cholick, or any sickness or griping in the Guts.

CCXV. *Of sickness in Horses.*

**S**ICKNESSES in general are of two sorts, one offending the whole body, the other a particular member; The first of them not visible; the other apparent, and known by its own demonstrations. Of the first then, which offends the whole body, as Fevers of all sorts, the Quotidian, Tertian, Quartan, and He-tick, Fevers Pestilential, Fevers accidental, or the general Plague, are known by these signs: much trembling, panting, sweating, and fallow countenance, hot breath, faintness in labour, decay in stomach, costiveness in the body; any or all of which when you perceive, First let the Horse bleed, and then give him Treacle: Take of Celandine roots and leaves a good handful, as much of Wormwood, as much of Rue, wash them well, and then stamp them in a Mortar; which done, boyl them in a quart of Ale, then strain them, and add to the Liquor half a pound of sweet Butter; then being luke-warm, give it to the Horse to drink.



CCXVI. *Of the head-ach, Frenzy or Staggers.*

**T**He signs to know these Diseases, which are all of one nature, and all of one effect Mortal, hanging down of the head, reeling; the cure is, to let the Horse bleed three mornings together, after walk him a while, then clothe him, cover his Temples over with a plaister of Pitch, and keep him exceeding warm, let his meat be little, and his stable dark.

CCXVII. *Of the sleeping evil.*

**T**He Sleeping-evil or Lethargy in Horses, proceeds from cold Phlegm, moist humours which bind up the vital parts, and make them dull and heavy: The signs are, continual sleeping, or desire thereunto. The cure is, to keep him much waking, and twice in a week to give him as much sweet Soap as a Duck-egg in the nature of a Pill, and after give him to drink new Milk and Honey.

CCXVIII. *Of the Falling-evil, Planet-struck, Night-Mare, or Palfie.*

**A**Lthough these Diseases have several faces, and look as if there were much difference between them, yet they are in nature all one, and proceed all from one offence, which is onely cold Phlegm, thick humour ingendred about the Brain, and benumbing the Senses, weakning the members; sometimes causing the Horse to fall down, and then it is called the Falling-evil; sometimes weakning but one member onely, and then it is called Planet-struck; sometimes

times oppressing a Horses stomach and making him sweat in his sleep, and then it is called the Nightmare; sometimes spoiling one special member by some strange contraction, and then it is called the Palsy. The cure for any of these infirmities, is to give the Horse this purging Pill: Take of Tar three spoonfuls, of sweet Butter the like quantity, beat them well together with the powder of Liquorish, Anniseeds and Sugar-candy till it be like a pätte, then make it into three round Balls, and put into each Ball two or three Cloves of Garlick, and give them to the Horse, observing to warm him both before and after, and keeping him fasting two or three hours both before and after.

CCXIX. *Of the general Cramp, or Convulsion of Sinews.*

**C**Ramps are taken to be contracting or drawing together of sinews of any one member; but Convulsions are, when the whole body, from the setting on of the head to the extremest part, are generally contracted or stiffened. The cure of either, is first to chafe and rub the member contracted with Vinegar and common Oyl, and then wrap it all over with wet Hay, or rotten Litter, or else with wollen clothes, either of which is a present remedy.

CCXX. *For any Cold or cough whatsoever, wet or dry; or for any consumption or Putrefaction of the Lungs whatsoever.*

**A** Cold is got by unnatural Heats and too sudden cooling, and these Colds ingender Coughs, and these Coughs putrefaction, and rottenness of the

**Lungs:** The cure therefore for them all in general, is to take a handful or two of the white and greenest Moss, which grows upon an old Oak, or any old Oaken-pale or Wood, and boyl it in a quart of Milk till it be thick; and being cold and turned to a jelly, then strain it and give it to the Horse luke-warm every Morning, till his Cough ceaseth.

*CCXXI. Of the running Glanders, or mourning of the Chine.*

**T**Ake of Auripigmentum two drams, of Tussilaginis as much made into powder, then mixing them together with Turpentine till they be like Paste, and making thereof little cakes, dry them before the fire; then take a Chafing-dish of Coals, and laying one or two of the Cakes thereon, cover them with a Tunnel, and when the smoak ariseth, put the Tunnel into the Horses Nostrils, and let the smoak go up into his head; which done, ride him till he sweat; do this once every Morning before he be watered, till the running at his Nostrils cease, and the Kernels under his Chaps be lessened.

*CCXXII. Of Hide-bound, or consumption of the Flesh,*

**H**ide-bound, or Consumption of the Flesh, proceedeth from unreasonable travel, disorderly Diet, and many Surfeits. It is known by a general dislike and leanness over the whole body, and by the sticking of the skin close to the body in such sort, that it will not rise from the body: The cure is, first to let the Horse blood, and then to give him to drink three or four Mornings together a quart of new Milk, with two spoonfulls of Honey, and one

*Green-*

spoonful of course Treacle ; let his food be either sodden Barly, warm Grains, and Salt, or Beans splitted in a Mill ; his drink Malles.

**CCXXIII.** *Of the Breast-pain, or any other sickness proceeding from the heart, as the Antocow and such like.*

**T**Hese Diseases proceed from too rank feeding and much fatness ; the signs are, A faltering in his Fore-legs, a disableness to bow down his neck, and a trembling over all his body : the cure is to let him blood, and to give him two Mornings together, two spoonfuls of Diapente in a quart of Ale and Beer, for it alone putteth away all infection from the heart.

**CCXXIV.** *Of Tired Horses.*

**I**F your Horse be tired in journeying, or in any Hunting match, your best help for him is to give him warm Urine to drink, and let him blood in the Mouth, to suffer him to lick up and to swallow the same : then if you come where any Nettles are, to rub his mouth and sheath well therewith, then gently to ride him till you come at the resting place, where set him up very warm, and before you go to bed give him six spoonfuls of *Aqua vite*, and as much provender as he will eat ; the next Morning rub his Legs with Sheeps-feet-oyl, and it will bring fresh nimbleness to his limbs.

**CCXXV.** *Of Diseases in the Stomach, as Surfeits, loathing of Meat or Drink.*

**I**F your Horſe with the Glut of Provender, or eating raw food, hath given ſuch offence to his ſtomach that he caſteth up all he eateth or drinketh, you muſt then give him comfortable things; as Diapente or Trephenicon in Ale or Beer, then keep him faſting; Let him have no food but what he eateth out of your hand; which would be bread well baked, Oats, and after two or three bits, a lock of ſweet Hay, and his drink ſhould be onely new Milk, till his ſtomach have gotten ſtrength; and in a bag you ſhall continually hang at his Noſe ſowr brown bread ſteeped in Vinegar, at which he muſt ever ſmell, and his ſtomach will quickly come again to its firſt ſtrength.

**CCXXVI.** *Of Foundring in the Body.*

**F**oundring in the Body is of all Surfeits the mortalleſt and ſoonest gotten; it proceedeth from Intemperate riding an Horſe when he is fat, and then ſuddenly ſuffering him to take cold; and there is nothing ſooner brings this infirmity, than walhing a fat Horſe: The ſigns are, ſadneſs of Countenance, ſtaring hair, ſtiffneſs of Limbs, and loſs of Belly: The cure is, onely to give him whoſom meat, and bread of clean Beans, and warm drink, and for two or three Mornings together, a quart of Ale brewed with Pepper and Cinamon, and a ſpoonful of Treacle.

**CCXXVII.**

CCXXVII. *Of the Hungry-Evil.*

**T**He hungry-evil is an unnatural and over-hasty greediness in an Horse to devour his meat faster then he can chew it, and is onely known by his greedy snatching at his meat as if he would devour it whole : The cure is, to give him to drink Milk, and Wheat-meal mixed together, a quart at a time, and to feed him with Provender by little and little till he forsake it.

CCXXVIII. *Of the Diseases of the Liver, as Inflammations, Obstructions, and Consumptions.*

**T**He Liver, which is the Vessel of blood, is subject to many Diseases, according to the distemperature of the Blood : and the signs to know it, are a stinking Breath, and a mutual looking towards his body. The cure is, to take Aristolochia longa, and to boyl it in running-water till half be consumed, and let the Horse drink continually thereof, and it will cure all Evils about the Liver.

CCXXIX. *Of the Diseases of the Gall, and specially of the Yellows.*

**F**rom the over-flowing of the Gall, which is the Vessel of Choler, spring many mortal Diseases, especially the Yellows, which is an extreme faint mortal sickness, if it be not prevented in time : The signs are, yellowness of the Eyes and Skin, and chiefly underneath his upper Lip next to his Fore-teeth, a sudden and faint falling down by the Highway, or in the Stable, and an universal sweat over all his



his body : The cure is, first to let the Horse blood in the Neck or Mouth, or under the Eyes ; then take two penny-worth of Saffron, which being dried and made into fine powder, mix it with sweet Butter, and in manner of a Pill, give it in balls to the Horse three mornings together ; Let his drink be warm, and his Hay sprinkled with water.

CCXXX. *Another for the same.*

**T**AKE a pint or more of Milk, and make a Posset of it, with strong Ale or Beer, a pint or more ; take off the Curd clean, then take two ounces of Castle-sope, pare it in thin small slices, and boyl it in the Posset-drink about a quarter of an hour ; then when it is but luke-warm give it the Horse to drink, then take his back and ride a gentle pace an hour together, set him up warm : This hath been often tryed upon Christians as well as Horses, they taking and walking and stirring upon it an hour or more, taking it but two Mornings together ; it never fail'd of curing those that have been so far spent with it, that they had been given over by all men.

CCXXXI. *Of the sickness of the Spleen.*

**T**HE Spleen, which is the Vessel of Melancholy, when it is over charged therewith, groweth painful, hard and great, in such sort, that sometimes it is visible : The signs are much groaning, hasty feeding, and a continual looking to the left side only. The cure is, take Agrimony, and boyl a good quantity thereof in the water the Horse shall drink, and chopping the leaves small, mix them with sweet Butter, and give the Horse two or three round Balls thereof in the manner of Pills.

CCXXXII.

CCXXXII. *Of the Dropsie, or evil Habit of the Body.*

**T**He Dropsie is an evil habit of the Body, which is ingendred by Surfeits, and unreasonable labour, altereth the colour and complexion of the Horse, and changeth the hairs in such an unnatural sort, that a man shall hardly know the beast with which he hath been most familiar. The cure is, to take a handful or two of Wormwood, and boyl it in Ale or Beer a quart or better, and give it the Horse to drink luke-warm Morning and Evening, and let him drink his water at noon.

CCXXXIII. *Of the Colick, Belly-ach, or Belly-bound.*

**T**He Colick or Belly-ach, is a fretting, gnawing or swelling of the belly or great bag, proceeding from windy humours, or from eating of green corn or pulse, hot grains without Salt or labour, or bread dough-baked: and Belly-bound is when a Horse cannot dung. The cure of the Colick or belly-ach is, to take good store of the herb Dill, and boyl it in his water that you give the Horse to drink: but if he cannot dung, then you shall boyl in the water good store of the Herb Fumitory; and it will make him dung without danger or hurting.

CCXXXIV. *Of the Lask or Bloody-flux.*

**T**He Lask or Bloody-flux is an unnatural loosness in a Horse's body, which being not stayed, will for want of other excrements make a Horse void blood onely. The cure is, to take a handful of the Herb Shepherds-purse, and boyl it in a quart of strong

Ale; and when it is luke-warm take the seeds of Woodroof, stamp them, and put them in, and give it the Horse to drink.

CCXXXV. *Of the falling out of the Fundament.*

**T**His cometh through infinite mislike and weakness. The cure is, take Town-creffes, and having dryed them to powder, with your hand put up the Fundament, and then strow the powder thereon; after it lay a little Honey thereon, and then strow more of the powder with the powder of cummin, and it helpeth.

CCXXXVI. *Of Botts and Worms of all Sorts.*

**T**He Botts and gnawing of worms is a grievous pain, and the signs to know them are, the Horses oft beating his Belly, and tumbling and wallowing on the ground, with much desire to lye on his back: The cure is, take the seeds bruised of the Herb Ameos, and mix with it Honey, and make two or three Balls, and make the Horse swallow them down.

CCXXXVII. *Of pain in the Kidneys; pain to piss, or the Stone.*

**A**LL these Diseases spring from one ground, which is onely Gravel and hard matter gathered together in the Kidneys, and so stopping the Conduits of the Urine: The signs are, that the Horse will only strain to Piss, and that often, but cannot. The cure is, to take a handful of Maiden-hair, and steep it all night in a quart of strong Ale, and give it the Horse to drink every morning till he be well: This will break any stone whatsoever in a Horse.

CCXXXVIII. *Of Pissing of blood.*

**T**His cometh with over-travelling a Horse, or travelling him sore in the Winter when he goeth to graze. The cure is, take Aristolochia Longa and boyl it in a quart of Ale, and give it the Horse to drink luke-warm, and give him also rest.

CCXXXIX. *Of the Strangullion.*

**T**His Disease is a soreness in the Horses Yard, and an hot burning when he pisseth: The signs are, he will piss oft, yet but a drop or two at once: The cure is, to boyl in the water he drinketh good store of the Herb Hogfennel, and it will cure.

CCXL. *Of the Cold-Evil, Mattering of the Yard, falling of the Yard, shedding of the Seed.*

**A**LL these Evils proceed from much Lust in a Horse; and the cure is, the powder of the Herb Avens, and the leaves of Betony, stamp them well with White-wine to a moist Salve and anoint the sore therewith, and it will heal all imperfections of the Yard: But if the Horse shed his seed, then beat Venice-Turpentine and Sugar together, and give him every Morning a good round ball thereof, till the seed stay.

## CCXLI.

CCXLI. *Of the particular Diseases in Mares, as barrenness, Consumption, rage of love, casting Foles, hardness to Fole, and how to make a Mare cast her Fole.*

**I**F you would have a Mare barren, let good store of the Herb Agnus Castus be boyled in the water she drinks: If you would have her fruitful, then boyl good store of Motherwort in the water: If she lose her belly, which sheweth a Consumption of the womb, you shall then give her a quart of Brine to drink, Mugwort being boyled therein: If your Mare through high keeping grow into extreme lust, so that she will neglect her food through the violency of fleshly appetite, as it is often seen amongst them, you shall house her for two or three days, and give her every Morning a ball of Butter and Agnus Castus chopt together: If you would have your Mare cast her Fole, take a handful of Betony and boyl it in a quart of Ale, and it will deliver her presently: If she cannot Fole, take the Herb Horse-mints, and either dry it or stamp it, and take the powder or the juyce, and mix it with strong Ale, and give it the Mare, and it will help her: If your Mare, from former bruises or strokes, be apt to cast her Foles, as many are, you shall keep her at Grass very warm, and once a week give her a warm Mash of drink, this secretly knitteth beyond expectation.

CCXLII.

CCXLII. *Of drinking Venome, as Horse-Leaches, Hens-dung, &c.*

**I**F your Horse have drunk Horse-leaches, eaten Hens-dung, Feathers, or such-like venomous things, which you shall know by his panting, swelling, or scowring; you shall take the Herb Sowthistle, and drying it beat it into powder, and put three Spoonfuls thereof into a pint of Ale, and give it to the Horse to drink.

CCXLIII. *Of Suppositories, Glisters, and Purgations.*

**I**F your Horse by sickness, strict Diet, and too vehement travel, grow dry and costive in his body, as it is ordinary, the easiest means in extremity to help him, is to give him a Suppository: the best of which is, to take a Candle of four in the pound, and cut off five Inches at the bigger end, and thrusting it up a good way into his Fundament, presently clap down his Tail and hold it hard to his Tewel, for a quarter of an hour, or half an hour, and then give him liberty to dung: But if this be not strong enough, then you shall give him a Glyster. And that is, take four handfuls of the Herb Annise, and boyl it in a pottle of running water till half be consumed; then take the Decoction and mix it with a pint of Sallet-Oyl, and a pretty quantity of Salt, and with a Glyster-pipe give it him at the Tewel. But if it be too weak, then give him a Purgation, thus: Take twenty Raisins of the Sun stoned, and ten Figs slit; boyl them in a pottle of running water till it come to a jelly, then mix it with the powder of Liquorish, Anniseeds, and Sugar-candy, till it be like



like Paste, make it into Balls, and roll it in sweet Butter, and so give it the Horse to the quantity of three Hens-Eggs.

CCXLIV. *Of Neefings and Frictions.*

**T**Here be two other excellent helps for sickHorses, as Frictions and Neefings; The first to comfort the outward parts of the body, when the vital powers are astonished; the other to purge the head when it is stopt with flegm, cold, and other thick humours: And of Frictions, the best is Vinegar and patch-Grease melted together, and very hot chafed into the Horses body against the hair: And to make a Horse Neefe, there is nothing better than to take a bunch of Pellitory of Spain, and tying it to a stick put it up into the Horse's Nostrils, and it will make him Neefe without hurt or violence.

CCXLV. *Of the Diseases in the Eyes, as watery Eyes, Blood-shotten-Eyes, dim Eyes, Moon Eyes, strokes on the Eyes, Warts in the Eyes, Inflammation in the Eyes, Pearl, Pin or Web, or Haw in the Eye.*

**U**Nto the Eye belongeth many Diseases, all which have their true signs, and their names; And as touching that which is watery, blood-shotten, Dim, Moon stricken or Inflamed, they have all one cure: Which is, to take Wormwood, beat it in a Mortar with the Gall of a Bull, strain it and anoint the Horses Eye therewith, and it is an approved remedy: But for a Wart, Pearl, Pin or Web, which are evils growing in or upon the Eyes; to take them off, take the juyce of herb Betony, and wash his eyes therewith, and it will waste them away: For the Haw, every Smith can cut it out.

CCXLVI.

**CCXLVI.** *Of the Impostume in the Ear, Poll-evil, Fistula, swelling after Bloodletting, any Galled back, Canker in the Withers, Setfast, Wens, Navel-Gall, or any hollow Ulcer.*

**T**Hese Diseases are so apparent and common, that they need no other description but their names : and the most certain cure is, to take Clay of a mud or Loam-wall, strawes and all, and boyl it in strong Vinegar, and apply it Plaisterwise to the Sore, and it will of its own nature search to the bottom and heal it, provided that if you see any dead or proud flesh arise, you eat or cut it away.

**CCXLVII.** *Of the Vives:*

**F**OR the Vives, which is an Inflammation of the Kernels between the chap and the neck of the Horse, Take a penny-worth of Pepper, Swines-grease a spoonful, the juyce of a handful of Rue, Vinegar two spoonfuls : mix them together, and then put it equally into both the Horse's Ears, then tye them up with two flat Laces, shut the Ears that the Medicine may go down ; which done, let the Horse blood in the neck and in the Temple-veins, and it is a certain cure.

**CCXLVIII.** *Of the strangle, or any boyl or Botch, or other Imposthume whatsoever.*

**A**LL these Diseases are of one nature, being onely hard boyls or Imposthumes, gathered together by evil humours, either between the chaps or elsewhere on the body : The cure is, take Southern-wood and  
S dry

...Receipts

dry it to powder, and with Barly-meal and the yolk of an Egg make it into a Salve, and lay it to the Imposthume, and it will ripen it, break it, and heal it.

CCXLIX. *Of the Canker in the Nose, or any other part of the Body.*

**T**O heal any Canker in what part soever it be; take the juyce of Plantain, as much Vinegar, and the same weight of the powder of Allum, and with it anoint the sore twice or thrice a day, and it will kill it, and cure it.

CCL. *Of Stanching of blood, whether it be at the Nose, or proceeding from any Wound.*

**I**F your Horse bleed violently at the Nose, and you cannot stanch it, then you shall take Betony, and stamp it in a Mortar with Salt, and put it into the Horses Nose, or apply it to the Wound, and it will stanch it; but if he be suddenly taken in riding by the High-way, or otherwise, and you cannot get this Herb, you shall then take any Woollen-cloth, or any Felt-hat, and with a Knife scrape a fine Lint from it, and apply it to the place bleeding, and it will stop.

CCLI. *Of pain in the Teeth, or loose Teeth.*

**F**OR any pain in the Teeth, take Betony, and seeth it in Ale or Vinegar till half be consumed, and wash all the Gums therewith; but if they be loose, then onely rub them with the leaves of Enulacampana, or Horse-holm, after they have been let blood, and it will fasten them.

CCLII.

**CCLII.** *Of Diseases in the Mouth, as Blood-Rifts, Liggs, Lampras, Camery, Inflammation, Tongue-burnt, or the Barbes.*

**I**F you find any infirmity in the Horses mouth, as the bloody-Rifts, which are chaps or Rifts in the Palate of the Horses Mouth; the Liggs, which are little Pustula's or Bladders within the Horses Lips; the Lampra's, which is an excrescence of flesh above the Teeth; the Camery, which are little Warts in the Roof of the Mouth; Inflammation, which is little Blisters; Barbes, which are two little Papps under the Tongue: Or any hurt on the Tongue by the Bit or otherwise; you shall take the leaves of Wormwood, and the leaves of Surewort, and beat them in a Mortar, with a little Honey, and with it anoint the Sores, and it will heal them. As for the Lampra's, they must be burned.

**CCLIII.** *Of the Crick in the Neck.*

**F**OR the Crick in the Neck, you shall first chafe it with the Friction mentioned in Receipt CCXLIV. and then anoint and bathe it with Sope and Vinegar mixed together.

**CCLIV.** *Of the falling of the Crest, Manginess in the Main, or the Shedding of the Hair.*

**A**LL these Diseases proceed from Poverty, Mislike, or over-riding; and the best cure for the falling of the Crest is Blood-letting, or good keeping, with good store of meat; for strength and fatness will ever raise the Crest: But if the Main be mangy, you shall

anoint it with Butter and Brimstone : And if the Hair fall away, then take Southernwood and burn it to Ashes ; then take the Ashes, and mix them with common Oyl ; anoint the place therewith , and it will bring Hair presently, both smooth, thick, and fair.

*CCLV. Of pain in the Withers.*

**A**N Horses Withers are subject to many Grievs and Swellings, which proceed from cold humors, sometimes from bad Saddles ; therefore if at any time you see any Swellings about them, you shall take the Herb Harts-tongue, and boyl it with Oyl of Roses, and apply it very hot to the Sore, and it will assuage it, or else break it and heal it.

*CCLVI. Of Swaying the Back, or Weakness in the Back.*

**T**Hese two infirmities are very dangerous, and may be eased, but never absolutely cured ; therefore where you find them, Take Coleworts and boyl them in Oyl, and mix them with a little Bean-flour, and chafe it into the Back, and it will strengthen it.

*CCLVII. Of the Itch in the Tail, or the general Scab or Manginess, or of the Farcey.*

**F**OR any of these Diseases, take fresh Grease and yellow Arsenick, mix them together, and where the Manginess or Itch is, there rub it hard in, the Sore being made raw before ; but if it be for the Farcion, then with a Knife slit all the Knots, both hard and soft, and then rub in the Medicine : which done, tye up the Horse, so that he may not come to bite

bite himself; after he hath stood an hour or two, take old Piss and Salt boyled together, and with it wash away the Oyntment, and then put him to meat: Do this two or three days together; provided always, that you first let the Horse bleed, and take good store from him, and give him every Morning a strong Scouring, or a strong purge, both which are shewed before.

CCLVIII. *Of Foundring in the Feet.*

**T**Here be two sorts of Foundring, a dry and a wet, The dry is incurable, the wet is thus to be cured and helped; First, pare all the Soals of his Feet, so thin, that you may see the quick; then let him bleed at every Toe, and let him bleed well; then stop the Vein with Tallow and Rosin; and having tackt on hollow shooes on his Feet, stop them with Bran, Tar, and Tallow, as boyling hot as may be, and renew it once in two days for a Week together: then Exercise him much, and his Feet will come to their true use and nimbleness.

CCLIX. *Of any halting which cometh by Strain or Stroke, either before or behind, from the shoulder or hip down to the hoof.*

**T**Here are many Infirmities which make an Horse halt, as pricking the Shoulder, a wrench in the Nether-joynts, splatting the Shoulder, Shoulder-pight, strains in joynts, and such like; all which, since they happen by one accident, as namely, by the violence of some slip or strain, so they may be cured by one Medicine, and it is thus. After you have found where the grief is, as you may do by griping and pinching every several Member, and there where he most complaineth, there is his most pain and



# Approved Receipts

grief; you shall take Vinegar, Bolearmoniack, the Whites of Eggs, & Bean-flour, and having beaten them into a perfect Salve, lay them very hot to the sore place, and 'twill cure it.

**CCLX.** *Of the Splent, Curb, bone-Spavin, or any Knob, or bony Excretion, or Ring-bone.*

**A** Splent is a bony Excretion under the Knee or the Fore-leg. The Curb is the like behind the hinder Hough. The Spavin is the like on the inside of the hinder Hough; and the Ring-bone is the like on the corner of the Hoof. And the cure is, First, upon the top of the Excretion make a slit with your Pen-knife, the length of a Barley-corn, or little more, and then, with a fine Cornet, raise the skin from the bone, and having made it hollow the compass of the Excretion and no more, take a little Lint and dip it in the Oyl of Origamum, and thrust it into the hole, and cover the Knob, and so let it abide till you see it rot, and that nature casteth out both the Medicine and the cure. As for the Ring-bone, you shall need to do no more but scarifie it, and anoint it with the Oyl onely.

**CCLXI.** *Of the Malender, Selander, Pains, Scratches, Mellet, Mules, Crown-Scabs, and such like.*

**F**Or any of these, you shall take Verdigrease, and soft Grease, and grind them together to an Oyntment; put it in the Box by it self; Then take Wax, Hogs-grease and Turpentine, of each alike, and being melted together, put this Salve into another Box: then when you come to dress the Sore, after you have taken off the Scab and made it raw, you shall  
anoint

anoint it with the green Salve of Verdigrease and fresh Grease, onely for two or three days; it is a sharp Salve, and will kill the Cankerous humour; then when you see the Sore look fair, you shall take two parts of the yellow Salve, and one part of the green Salve, and mix them together, and anoint the Sore therewith till it be whole, making it stronger or weaker, as you shall find occasion.

CCLXII. *Of any upper Attaint, or nether-Attaint, or any hurt by over-reaching.*

THEse Attaints are Strokes or Knots, by over-reaching, either on the Back Sinew of the Fore-leg, on the Heels or nether-joynts, and may be healed safely by the same former Medicine, which healed the Malender or Selender in the former Receipt; Onely for the over-reaches, you shall before you apply the Salve, lay the Sore plain open without hollownes, and wash it with Beer and Salt, or Vinegar and Salt.

CCLXIII. *Of Wind-Gauls.*

THEse are little Blebs, or small soft swellings on each side the Foot-lock, procured by much travel on hard and stony ways: The cure is, to prick them and let out the Jelly, and then dry the Sore with a Plaister of Pitch.

CCLXIV. *Of interfering or Shackle-gauls, or any Gaulings.*

INTERfering is hewing one Leg against another, and striking off the skin; It proceedeth from weak-

ness, and straitness of the Horses pace ; and Shackle-gauling is any gauling under the Foot-lock : the cure is, to anoint them with Turpentine and Verdigrease mixed together, or Turpentine alone, if it rankle not too much.

CCLXV. *Of the infirmities of Hoofs, as false Quarters, loose Hoofs, and Hoof-bound, Hoof-running, Hoof brittle, Hoof-burt, Hoof-soft, Hoof-hard, or generally to preserve Hoofs.*

**T**HE Hoof is subject to many infirmities. As first, to half quarters, which cometh by pricking, and must be helpt by good shooing, where the shoe must bear on every part of the Foot but upon the half quarters onely. If the Hoof be loose, anoint it with Burgundy-pitch, and it will knit it ; if it be clean cut off, then Burgundy-pitch and Tallow moulten together, will bring a new ; if it be bound or straitned, it must be well opened at the Heels, the Soal kept moist, and the Cornet anointed with the fat of Bacon and Tar ; if the frush of the Foot run with stinking matter, it must be stopped with Soot, Turpentine, and Bolearmoniack mixed together ; if it be brittle and broken, then anoint it with Pitch and Linseed-oyl molten to a soft Salve ; if it be soft, then stop it with Soap and the Ashes of a burnt Felt mixed together ; if the Hoofs be hard, lay hot burnt Cinders upon them, and then stop them with Tow and Tallow. And generally for the preserving of all good Hoofs, anoint them daily with the Sward of Bacon.

**CCLXVI.** *Of the Blood-spaven, or Hough-bony, or any other unnatural Swelling, from what cause soever it proceedeth.*

**T**Hese two are Pustules, or soft round Swellings; the first is of the inside of the hinder Hough, and the other on the very huckle of the Hough; they are soft and very sore: The cure is, first to bind up the Vein above, and let it blood onely from below; then having tyed it fast with two Shoemakers ends on both sides, then slit the Vein in two pieces; then take Linseed and bruise it in a Mortar, mix it with Cow-dung, and heat it in a Frying-pan, and so apply it to the Swelling onely: and if it break and run, then heal it with a Plaister of Pitch, and the Horse will never be troubled with a Spavin more. But if the Swelling come by strain or bruise, then take Pitch-grease and melt it, anoint the Sore therewith, holding a hot Iron near it to sink in the Grease, then fold a Linnen-cloth about it, and it will assuage all Swellings whatsoever.

**CCLXVII.** *Of Wounds in the Feet, as Graveling, Pricking, Fig, Retrait, or Cloying.*

**I**F your Horse have any Wound in his Foot, by what mischance soever, you shall first search it, to see if it be clear of any Nails point, or other Splent to annoy it, then wash it very well with White-wine and Salt, and after tent it with the Oyntment called Egyptianum, and then lay hot upon the tent, Flax or Hards, with Turpentine, Oyl and Wax mingled together, and anoint all the Hoof on the top and Cornet, with Bole-armoniack and Vinegar: do this twice in a day till the Sore be whole.

**CCLXVIII.**

**CCLXVIII.** *Hurts on the Cornet, as the Quitter-bone or Matlong.*

**T**He Quitter-bone is a hollow Ulcer on the top of the Cornet, and so is the Matlong; And the cure is, first to tent it with Verdigrease till you have eaten out the core, and made the Wound clean, then you shall heal it up with the same Salve that you heal the Scratches.

**CCLXIX.** *To draw out a Stub or Thorn.*

**T**Ake the Herb Ditany, and bruise it in a Mortar with black Soap, and lay it to the sore; and it will draw out the Splint, Iron or Thorn.

**CCLXX.** *Of the Anbury, or Tetter.*

**T**He Anbury is a bloody wart on any part of the Horses body, and the Tetter is a Cankerous Ulcer like it. The cure of both, is an hot Iron, to sear the one plain to the body, and to scarifie the other: then take the juyce of Plantain and mix it with Vinegar, Honey, and the powder of Allom, and with it anoint the sore till it be whole.

**CCLXXI.** *Of the Cords, or String-bait.*

**T**His is an unnatural binding of the Sinews; which imperfection a Horse brought into the World with him, and therefore it is certain it is incurable, and not painful, but an Eye-sore: yet the best way to keep it from worse inconvenience, is to bathe his limbs in the Decoction of Cole-worts.

**CCLXXII.**

CCLXXII. *Of Spur-galling, and fretting the skin and Hair.*

**F**Or this there is nothing better then Piss and Salt, and to wash the fore therewith daily.

CCLXXIII. *Of Sinews being cut.*

**I**F the Horse Sinews be cut, take the leaves of wild Nep or Woodbine, and beat them in a Mortar with May-Butter; apply it to the place, and it will knit the Sinews.

CCLXXIV. *Of Knots in the Joints.*

**P**atch-grease applyed as is before shewed for swellings, will take away any hard knot in the Flesh, or upon the Sinews.

CCLXXV. *Of venomous Wounds, or Bitings with a Mad Dog, Tusks of a Boar, Serpents, or such like.*

**F**Or any of these Mortal or Venomous Wounds, take Yarrow, Calamint, and the Grains of Wheat, and make it into a Salve, and lay it to the fore, and it will heal it safely.

CCLXXVI. *Of Lice or Nits.*

**T**He filthiness of Vermine, is bred in a Horse through unnatural dislike and poverty. The cure is, take the jayce of Beets and Stavesacre beaten together, and with it anoint the Horses body all over, and it will make him clean.

CCLXXVII.



CCLXXVII. *Of defending an Horse from Flies.*

**T**Ake the juyce of Pellitory of *Spain*, and mixing it with Milk, anoint the Horses Belly therewith, and no Flies will trouble him.

CCLXXVIII. *Of broken Bones, or Bones out of joynt.*

**A**Fter you have placed the Bones in the true place, take the Root of Osmond and beat it in a Mortar with the Oyl of Swallows, and anoint all the Member therewith ; then splent it, and roul it up, and in fifteen days the Bones will knit and be strong.

CCLXXIX. *A most famous Receipt to make an Horse that is lean, and full of inward Sicknes, sound and fat in fourteen days.*

**T**Ake of Wheat-flour six pounds, Anniseeds two ounces, Cummin-seeds six drams, Carthamus one dram and a half, Fennugreek-seeds one ounce two drams, Brimstone one ounce and a half, Sallet-oyl one pint, Honey one pound and a half, White-wine a pottle: this must be made into a Paste, the hard simples being beaten into a Powder, and finely searfed and kneaded together, and so made into Balls as big as a Mans Fist : then every morning consume one of these Balls in his cold water that he drinketh morning and evening, for fifteen days together ; and at first, if he be dainty to drink the Water, yet care not, but let him fast till he drink it ; and after he begins to take it, he will drink it with great greediness.

---

*A Collection of certsin Approved Receipts not Printed in  
the former Impressions.*

*A Purge to carry off any melted Grease, or sharp foul  
humour.*

**T**AKE one ounce of fine Aloes in a Powder, then add to it half an ounce of Cream of Tartar, and as much grated Ginger as will lye on a Sixpence; beat and mix all these well together, then take as much fresh Butter as will make this into two Balls; then in the Morning fasting, give it to your Horse, ride him gently upon it; let him fast three or four hours, then let him eat some Hay, and after he hath eaten Hay half an hour, then let him drink as much warm water as he will, and so again at Night; the next morning walk him out gently for half an hour, let him drink cold Water moderately; then his Purge will work: let him be ridden out five or six times that day, not too long at a time, so that will keep him from being sick; but let him drink every time a little cold water. The first morning that you give him the Purge with a Quart of warm Ale, litter him well, and cloth him warm. *Proved.*

*For a Blow or any thing on the Eye, or any dimness of  
Sight.*

**T**AKE of the Powder of Cuttle-bone, as much as will lye on a Sixpence; grate some Ginger, and afterwards pound it very fine, take as much of it as will lye on a Twopence: mix the Cuttle-bone and Ginger well together, then take as much Virgin-hony

hony as a Nutmeg ; mix all these well together, then, with a Feather put some of this into your Horses eye two or three times a day, and this will cure without doubt, if curable : you must use it three or four days together, or more if need shall require. *Proved.*

*For the Farcey.*

**T**AKE two pounds of Hemp-seed, beat it very fine, and half a handful of Rosemary, half a handful of Rue, half a handful of Hyssop. Boyl all this in a Gallon of Spring-water, till the fourth part be boyled away : then strain it out, and give it your Horse a little more than blood-warm ; let your Horse blood the day before you give it to him ; Ride him a little gently, and let him fast six hours after he hath taken it, and at Night give him two quarts of warm water ; give him Straw to eat, and Beans with a little Bran ; if you see not the buds begin to sink, two days after let blood very much, and give him the same drink, and let him fast six hours upon it, and then give him two quarts of warm water : at night let him eat nothing but straw and Beans, with a little Bran ; keep him dry, and keep him out of the Wind as much as you can ; that day you do not drench him, give him two quarts of warm water, and two at Night, and then in three days if you see not the Farcey cured, let him blood again, and give him the same drink again, and so keep him as aforesaid : if the Buds break, flake a piece of Stone-Lyme in White-wine-Vinegar, and dress the sores ; four or five days after, give the Purge before mentioned, and that will cleanse his body, and carry away all foul humours. *Proved.*

*For*

*For the Sinew-strain.*

**T**AKE a handful of Blue Clay, and as much Bolearmoniack as will fill an Egg-shell, and the Whites of three or four Eggs, one ounce of the Oyl of Turpentine, half a Gill of Brandy, and half a Gill of White-wine-Vinegar, and work this a quarter of an hour with your hand, then lay it on with some Flax, as you do a charge to the Back-sinew. It fails not, unless it be an old Clap.

*If it be an old Clap, take this following Receipt.*

**T**AKE a Cat and cut off her Head, and her Legs, and rip her open at Back; lay her inside, with Guts, &c. to the Sinew, with her Back closing together upon the forepart of the Horses Leg. Let it be put on warm, and serve another Cat or two the same. Let it lye twenty four hours at a time; this being done, and dry, take an ounce of the Oyl of Turpentine, half a Gill of Brandy, as much soft Sope as a Pullets-Egg; beat all these very well together, rub it into the Sinew, and dry it in with a hot Iron, and this will cure it. Approved by many.

---

**FINIS.**

---

Books sold by *Obadiab Blagrove*, at the  
Bear in *St. Paul's Church-Yard*.

**P***Hilps's* New world of words, or a general English Dictionary, containing the interpretation of all hard English words, with the definitions of all those terms that conduce to the understanding of any of the Arts or Sciences, the 4<sup>th</sup> Edition, fol.

*Mr. John Gadbury's* Ephemeris, for twenty Years yet to come and unexpired, quarto.

*Blagraves* Astrological Practice of Physick, octavo, large.

*Blagraves* Supplement to *Mr. Nicholas Culpepers* English Physician, octavo, large.

*Culpepers* School of Physick, or the Experimental Practice of the whole Art, octavo, large.

*Culpepers* last Legacy left and bequeathed to his Wife, for the publick good; being the choice of all his Secrets in Physick and Chirurgery, octavo, large.

*Cockers* Englands Pen-man, containing 28 large Copper Plates with printed directions for good Writing.

*St. Foine* improved, a discourse shewing the utility and benefit which *England* hath and may receive by the Grass called *St. Foine*, and answering to objections urged against it; useful for all Country-men to have, quarto.

